Network Manager
nominated by
the European Commission

EUROCONTROL

EUROCONTROL Specification

EUROCONTROL Specifications for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training

Edition: 2.0
Edition date: 02/04/2015
Reference Number: EUROCONTROL-SPEC-157

EUROPEAN ORGANISATION
FOR THE SAFETY OF AIR NAVIGATION

EUROCONTROL

EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training

Edition Number	**:**	**2.0**
Edition Date	**:**	**02.04.2015.**
Status	**:**	**Released issue**
Intended for	**:**	**NMD Stakeholders**

NETWORK MANAGER DIRECTORATE

DOCUMENT CHARACTERISTICS

TITLE		
EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training		
Document Identifier	**Edition Number:**	2.0
EUROCONTROL-SPEC-157	**Edition Date:**	02/04/2015

Abstract

This document provides the second edition of the Specification for ATCO Common Core Content Initial (Basic and Rating training) training.

It includes a main body of text, explaining the background, context, traceability and use of the Common Core Content Initial Training principles relevant to various syllabi, and seven separate Annexes. Annex 1 corresponds to the Basic training while the six others annexes correspond to the ratings syllabi for Aerodrome Control Visual and Instrument ratings, Approach Control Procedural and Surveillance ratings, and Area Control Procedural and Surveillance ratings.

Keywords

Specification	Initial Training	Ratings	CCC
Area Surveillance	Area Procedural	Aerodrome Visual	Basic Training
Approach Surveillance	Approach Procedural	Aerodrome Instrument	

Contact(s) Person	**Tel**	**Unit**
Vladimir Bubalo	+352-43.60.61.924	Training Support and Tools (TST) Unit

STATUS, AUDIENCE AND ACCESSIBILITY					
Status		**Intended for**		**Accessible via**	
Working Draft	☐	General Public	☑	Intranet	☐
Draft	☐	NMD Stakeholders	☐	Extranet	☐
Proposed Issue	☐	Restricted Audience	☐	Internet (www.eurocontrol.int)	☑
Released Issue	☑				

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

The following table identifies all management authorities who have successively approved the present issue of this document.

AUTHORITY	NAME AND SIGNATURE	DATE
NMD/TRG/TST Editors	Ms. Ashley LAURYSSEN Mr. Vladimir BUBALO	10/03/2015
Chairman EUROCONTROL ATM Training Team (ATT)	Mr. Jesper KROGH AVINOR, AS, ANS	10/03/2015
Head of Division NMD/TRG	Mr. Alex WANDELS	10.03.2015
Head of Unit DPS/STAN	Mr. Peter GREEN	10/03/2015
Director NMD	Mr. [illegible] SUSANA	10/03/2015
Director General	Mr. Frank BRENNER	23/3/15

DOCUMENT CHANGE RECORD

The following table records the complete history of the successive editions of the present document.

EDITION NUMER	EDITION DATE	REASON FOR CHANGE	PAGES AFFECTED
1.0	04.02.2008	First Edition as Eurocontrol Specification – Draft released by ACCCT TF	All
1.2	23.09.2014	Draft for ACCCT TF review	All
1.3	10.10.2014	Proposed edition for ATT	All
2.0	02.04.2015	Released issue	All

Contents

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training Edition 2.0 is a training document that serves two purposes:

- For European training organisations complying with ***Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on air traffic controllers' licences and certificates***, it combines the mandatory aspects of these implementing rules with the acceptable means of compliance to provide an integrated document.

- For European organisations not required to comply with EU legislation, it provides an ATC Initial training syllabi that retains references to ICAO documentation.

This second edition of the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training is the result of a major review conducted by the EUROCONTROL ATCO Common Core Content Training Task Force (ACCCT TF) in cooperation with the EASA Rulemaking Group ATM003 – Requirements on Air Traffic Controller licensing.

The Specification contains information relevant to the background, context and use of the Common Core Content Initial Training document.

Associated with the Specification are seven separate Annexes. Each Annex contains a complete syllabus for the following:

- Annex 1: Basic syllabus
- Annex 2: Aerodrome Control Visual Rating syllabus
- Annex 3: Aerodrome Control Instrument Rating with TWR syllabus
- Annex 4: Approach Control Procedural Rating syllabus
- Annex 5: Area Control Procedural Rating syllabus
- Annex 6: Approach Control Surveillance Rating syllabus
- Annex 7: Area Control Surveillance Rating syllabus

References, abbreviations and acronyms used in this publication, and the list of contributors complete the document.

1. Introduction

The **EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training** contains the Initial training syllabus. This specification consists of a main body of text (i.e. this part of the document), explaining the fundamental principles for understanding and applying the various syllabi contained in seven separate Annexes. Each annex contains a complete syllabus.

These syllabi are structured so that it is possible for them to be used by organisations that are required to comply with ***Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340 of 20 February 2015 laying down technical requirements and administrative procedures relating to air traffic controllers' licences and certificates pursuant to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council, amending Commission Implementing Regulation (EU) no 923/2012 and repealing Commission Regulation (EU) No 805/2011*** and those that are not.

2. Background

The ECAC Strategy for the nineties called for the definition of guidelines for the selection, training and licensing of Air Traffic Services staff in the ECAC Member States.

The Human Resources Team, within the European Air Traffic Management Programme, established through its Training Focus Group, the Task Force Common Core Content (TF-CCC) to design a set of objectives for Air Traffic Controller training.

The TF-CCC created a guideline 'standard' for the training of ATCOs. The guideline standard included syllabi and training objectives that were considered to be common to all ECAC Member States, hence the term "common core content". The syllabi covered training objectives for ATCOs from entry into training, to the issue of a Student Air Traffic Control Licence. This phase of training has become known as Initial Training and includes both Basic and Rating Training. The document, through its various revisions became known as the **Guidelines for ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training**.

On 10th November 2003, the **EUROCONTROL Safety Regulatory Requirement (ESARR5) on ATM Services Personnel** was published. This document required that Initial Training of ATCOs satisfy, as a minimum, the contents of the Guidelines for Common Core Content Training.

On the 5th April 2006 the European Commission published its Directive on a Community Air Traffic Controller Licence. The Directive referred to the objectives in the Guidelines for ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training Ed. 2.0 as the minimum training required for approved initial training courses.

The ATCO CCC Task Force was formed in November 2005 to complete a major review of the Common Core Content. During its review process, the Task Force agreed that, given the mandatory nature of the document, the word "Guideline" in the title was misleading. After completion of the major review, the document was submitted, through the EUROCONTROL Regulatory and Advisory Framework processes, for approval as a EUROCONTROL Specification. The **EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training** was approved on the 21st October 2008.

In 2009 EASA acquired competencies to develop safety regulations in the field of ATM/ANS and aerodromes. As a consequence, an EASA rulemaking task was started to develop implementing rules, acceptable means of compliance and guidance material for the licensing and medical certification of air traffic controllers.

In a first step, (and part of the so called 'fast-track' process), the ATCO CCC Specification

was referenced in the ***Commission Regulation 805/2011 laying down detailed rules for air traffic controllers' licences and certain certificates pursuant to Regulation (EC) No216/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council*** as the minimum training required for approved initial training courses.

In the second step of the EASA rulemaking task, EUROCONTROL and its ACCCT TF worked in collaboration with EASA to revise the training syllabi in the ATCO CCC Initial Training Specification. These revised syllabi were then transposed into the ***Commission Regulation (EU) No 2015/340 of 20 February 2015 laying down technical requirements and administrative procedures relating to air traffic controllers' licences and certificates*** and its Acceptable Means of Compliance (AMC). The transposed syllabi contain AMC content that specifically references EU regulations.

At this point it became necessary to update the EUROCONTROL Specification. Edition 2.0 of the CCC now reflects the user requirements of both EU and non-EU stakeholders.

This edition therefore contains a verbatim and integrated copy of the syllabi that are in the ***Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340*** and then adds, in a separate and clearly identifiable manner, references in the training content that are relevant to stakeholders not obliged to comply with EU regulations. These references relate primarily to ICAO and EUROCONTROL documentation.

3. Intended users

This document is aimed at:

- **Training providers** who are responsible for the development of ATCO Initial training in accordance with ***Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on air traffic controllers' licences and certificates.*** This document may be used in conjunction with the regulation as a reference to ensure that all relevant objectives have been included in the appropriate courses.

- **Training providers** who are responsible for the development of ATCO Common Core Content Initial training courses in accordance with regulations that are not governed by European Union regulations. This document may be used as a reference to ensure that all the relevant objectives have been included in the appropriate courses.

- **Regulators** who are responsible for certifying Common Core Content compliant courses but who are not obliged to comply with the ***Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on air traffic controllers' licences and certificates.*** This document shall be used as a reference to ensure that all the relevant objectives have been included in the appropriate courses

4. Traceability to regulatory requirements

For training organisations providing ATCO training to meet the requirements laid down in ***the Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340 of 20 February 2015 laying down technical requirements and administrative procedures relating to air traffic controllers' licences and certificates***, and the acceptable means of compliance (AMCs) associated with the regulation, this Specification does not change any of the content in the regulation, but rather provides a document that combines the relevant elements into a familiar user format.

The relevant requirements are listed below:

ANNEX 1, PART ATCO, REQUIREMENTS FOR THE LICENCING OF AIR TRAFFIC CONTROLLERS

SUBPART B – Licences, Ratings and Endorsements

ATCO.B.001 Student air traffic controller licence

(a) …
(b) Applicants for the issue of a student air traffic controller licence shall:
    1. …
    2. have successfully completed initial training at a training organisation satisfying the requirements laid down in Annex III (Part ATCO.OR) relevant to the rating, and if applicable, to the rating endorsement, as set out in Part ATCO, Subpart D, Section 2;

And

ANNEX 1, PART ATCO, REQUIREMENTS FOR THE LICENCING OF AIR TRAFFIC CONTROLLERS

SUBPART D – Air traffic controller training

Section 1 General Requirements

ATCO.D.005 Types of air traffic controller training

(a) Air traffic controller training shall consist of the following types:
    1. initial training, leading to the issue of a student air traffic controller licence or to the issue of an additional rating and, if applicable, rating endorsement, providing:

        i. 'basic training': theoretical and practical training designed to impart fundamental knowledge and practical skills related to basic operational procedures;
        ii. 'rating training': theoretical and practical training designed to impart knowledge and practical skills related to a specific rating and, if applicable, rating endorsement;

Section 2 Initial training requirements

ATCO.D.010 Composition of initial training

(a) Initial training, intended for an applicant for a student air traffic controller licence or for the issue of an additional rating and/or, if applicable, rating endorsement, shall consist of:
    1. Basic training, comprising all the subjects, topics and sub-topics contained in Appendix 2 of Annex I; and

    2. Rating training, comprising the subjects, topics and sub-topics of at least one of the following:

        i. Aerodrome Control Visual Rating – ADV, defined in Appendix 3 of Annex I;
        ii. Aerodrome Control Instrument Rating – ADI(TWR), defined in Appendix 4 of Annex I;
        iii. Approach Control Procedural Rating – APP, defined in Appendix 5 of Annex I;

iv. Area Control Procedural Rating – ACP, defined in Appendix 6 of Annex I;
v. Approach Control Surveillance Rating – APS, defined in Appendix 7 of Annex I;
vi. Area Control Surveillance Rating – ACS, defined in Appendix 8 of Annex I.

(b) Training intended for an additional rating shall consists of subjects, topics and sub-topics applicable to at least one of the ratings established in point (a) (2).
(c) …
(d) …
(e) Basic and/or rating training may be complemented with subjects, topics and subtopics that are additional or specific to the Functional Airspace Block (FAB) or to the national environment.

This Specification takes the mandatory subjects, topics and sub-topics listed in the above mentioned Appendices 2 to 8 and combines them with the AMCs that support these requirements.

For ease of use, the table below shows the correlation between the Annexes of the EUROCONTROL Specification and the Annexes/Appendices of the ***Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340 of 20 February 2015 laying down technical requirements and administrative procedures relating to air traffic controllers' licences and certificates.***

Specification Annex	**Regulation (EU) 2015/340**
Annex 1 (Basic)	Annex 1, Appendix 2
Annex 2 (ADV)	Annex 1, Appendix 3
Annex 3 (ADI/TWR)	Annex 1, Appendix 4
Annex 4 (APP)	Annex 1, Appendix 5
Annex 5 (ACP)	Annex 1, Appendix 6
Annex 6 (APS)	Annex 1, Appendix 7
Annex 7 (ACS)	Annex 1, Appendix 8

For non-EU and military stakeholders, the relevant national regulations and any bilateral agreements with the European Union, shall be applicable.

5. Context

5.1 *Training Context*

There are three types of air traffic controller training, leading towards the issue and maintenance of an air traffic control licence and associated unit endorsements. Initial training is the first type. The following section briefly describes the types of training, so as to put Initial training into its overall context.

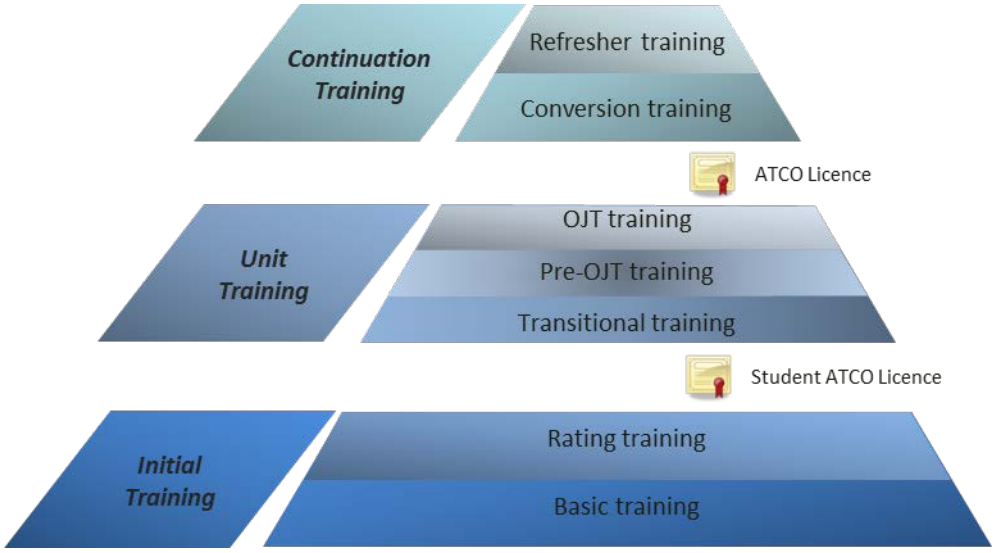


Figure 1: Progression of ATCO Training

5.1.1 Initial Training

The objective of initial training is to prepare an *ab initio* for training at an air traffic control (ATC) unit. Initial training leads to the issue of a student air traffic controller licence or to the issue of an additional rating and, if applicable, rating endorsement. It includes:

5.1.1.1 Basic Training

Theoretical and practical training designed to impart fundamental knowledge and practical skills related to basic operational procedures.

5.1.1.2 Rating Training

Theoretical and practical training designed to impart knowledge and practical skills related to a specific rating and, if applicable, rating endorsement.

5.1.2 Unit Training

Training that leads to the issue of air traffic controller licence, the issue of a rating endorsement, the validation of rating(s) or rating endorsement(s) and/or the issue or renewal of a unit endorsement. It comprises the following phases:

5.1.2.1 Transitional Training

Training designed primarily to impart knowledge and understanding of site-specific operational procedures and task-specific aspects.

5.1.2.2 Pre-On-the-Job Training (Pre-OJT)

Training for unit endorsement(s) that require the handling of complex and dense traffic situations. This phase of training is required to enhance the previously acquired rating routines and skills and to prepare for live traffic situations which may be encountered in that unit.

5.1.2.3 On-the-Job Training (OJT)

Final phase of unit training during which previously acquired job-related routines and skills are integrated in practice under the supervision of a qualified on-the-job training instructor in a live traffic situation.

5.1.3 Continuation Training

Training designed to maintain the validity of the endorsements of the licence. It includes refresher and conversion training (when relevant).

5.1.3.1 Refresher Training

Refresher training is designed to review, reinforce or enhance the existing knowledge and skills of air traffic controllers to provide a safe, orderly and expeditious flow of air traffic and shall contain at least:

a) standard practices and procedures training, using approved phraseology and effective communication,

b) abnormal and emergency situations training, using approved phraseology and effective communication, and

c) human factors training.

Abnormal Situations Training

Training for circumstances, including degraded situations, which are neither routinely nor commonly experienced and for which an air traffic controller has not developed automatic skills.

A degraded situation is the result of a technical system failure or malfunction or a set of circumstances arising from human error or violation of rules affecting the quality of the service provided.

Emergency Training

Training designed to impart knowledge, skills and behaviour in case of an emergency situation. An emergency situation means a serious and dangerous situation that requires immediate actions.

The essential difference between an abnormal situation and an emergency situation is that the element of danger or serious risk is not necessarily present in an abnormal situation.

5.1.3.2 Conversion Training

Training designed to provide knowledge and skills appropriate to a change in the operational environment and shall be provided when the safety assessment of the change concludes the need for such training.

6. How to use this document

6.1 *Training Providers*

Training providers may use this document as a reference when designing their initial training courses. The composition of these courses is decided at the level of local implementation of the CCC. It is to be remembered that no objective from the Basic syllabus is repeated as 'a refresher' in the Rating syllabus.

Any of the syllabi may be provided as separate or integrated courses.

Note: For organisations complying with ***Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340*** - ATCO.D.020 (c) states that when an integrated course is provided, a clear distinction shall be made between the examinations and assessments for basic training and each rating training.

Training providers must be familiar with the concepts of repeated and common objectives when structuring their courses. These concepts are explained in section 6.6.

6.2 *Flexible use of CCC syllabi*

The diagrams below indicate the links between the Initial Training syllabi. The CCC flexibility allows any combination or merging of the syllabi.

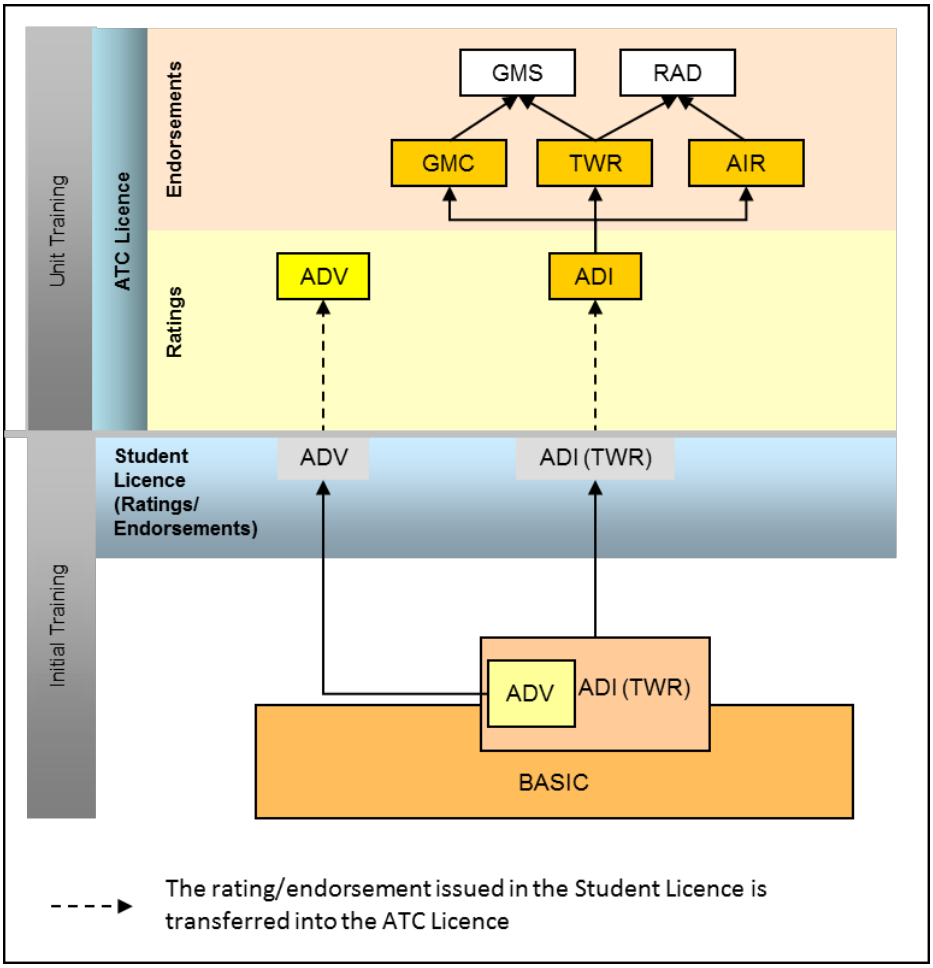


Figure 2: Relationship between Aerodrome Control CCC syllabi and ATC licence ratings and/or endorsements

Glossary of abbreviations used in the diagram

ADI Aerodrome Control Instrument
ADI(TWR) Aerodrome Control Instrument for Tower
ADV Aerodrome Control Visual
AIR Air Control
GMC Ground Movement Control
GMS Ground Movement Surveillance
RAD Aerodrome Radar Control
TWR Tower Control

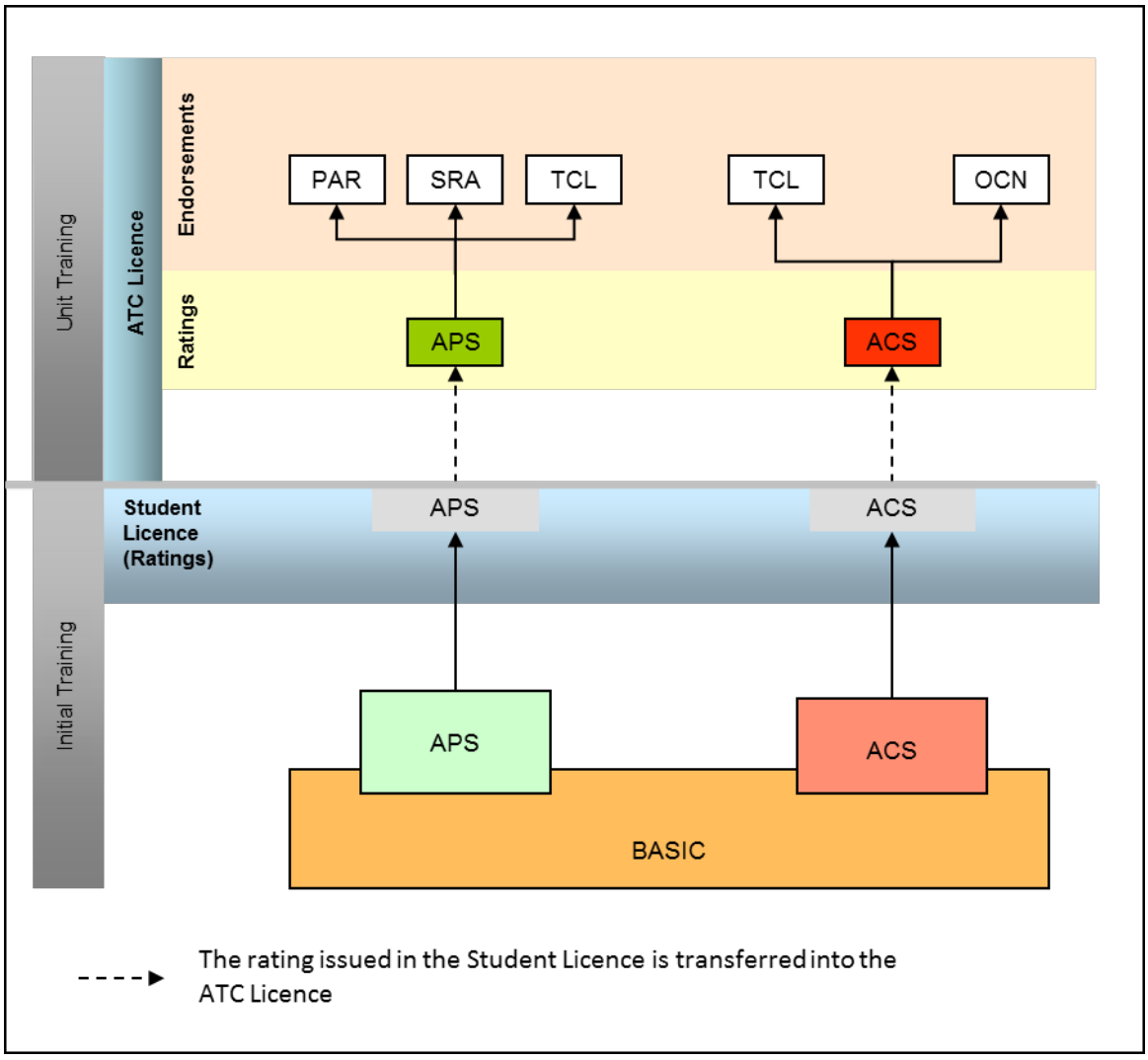


Figure 3: Relationship between Approach and Area Control Surveillance CCC syllabi and ATC licence ratings and/or endorsements

Glossary of abbreviations used in the diagram

ACS Area Control Surveillance

APS Approach Control Surveillance

OCN Oceanic Control

PAR Precision Approach Radar

SRA Surveillance Radar Approach

TCL Terminal Control

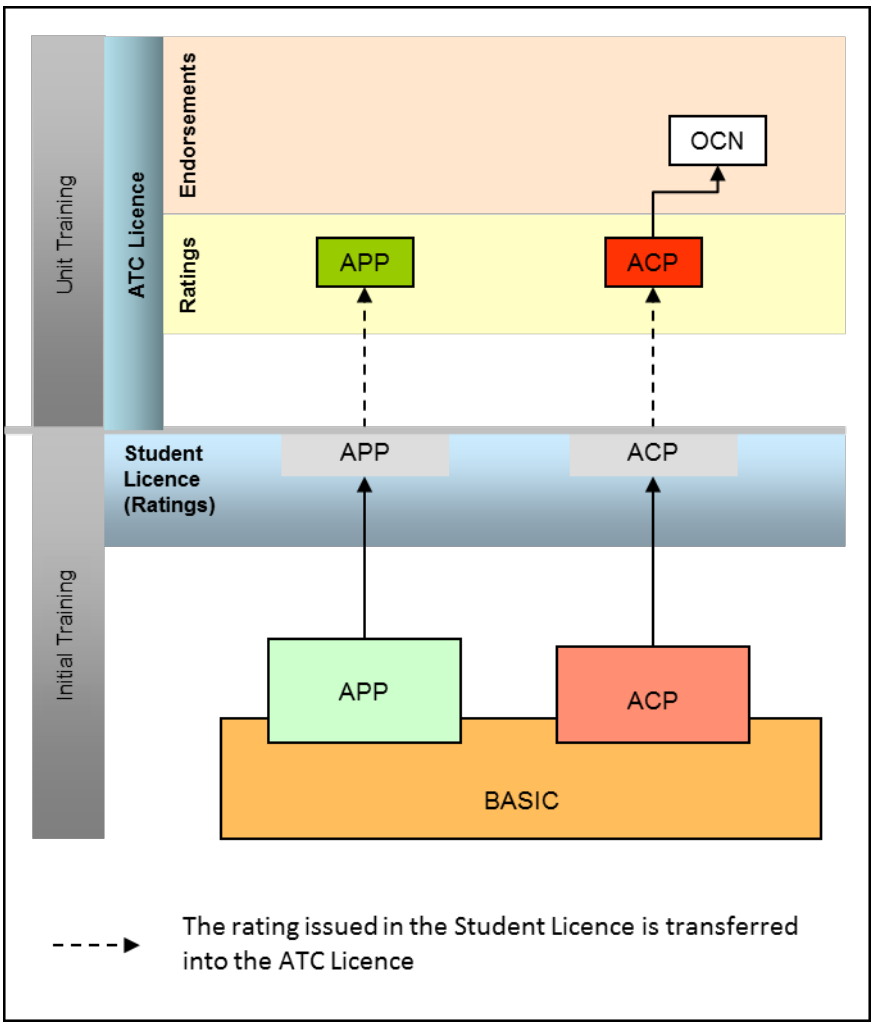


Figure 4: Relationship between Approach and Area Control Procedural CCC syllabi and ATC licence ratings

Glossary of abbreviations used in this diagram

ACP Area Control Procedural

APP Approach Control Procedural

OCN Oceanic Control

6.3 *Specification structure*

The EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training consists of a main body of text (i.e. this part of the document), explaining the fundamental principles for understanding and applying the various syllabi, and seven separate Annexes. Each Annex contains a complete syllabus.

		BASIC:	Annex 1 - Basic syllabus
TRAINING	**AERODROME**	**ADV:**	Annex 2 – Aerodrome Control Visual Rating syllabus
		ADI/TWR:	Annex 3 - Aerodrome Control Instrument Rating for Tower syllabus
RATING	**PROCEDURAL**	**APP:**	Annex 4 - Approach Control Procedural Rating syllabus
		ACP:	Annex 5 - Area Control Procedural Rating syllabus
	SURVEILLANCE	**APS:**	Annex 6 - Approach Control Surveillance Rating syllabus
		ACS:	Annex 7 - Area Control Surveillance Rating syllabus

6.4 *Syllabi structure*

Each syllabus is divided into subjects, which are divided into topics that are in turn divided into sub-topics. This structure is used to create and classify the objectives: one subject objective is linked to each subject and one or several objectives are linked to each sub-topic.

Objectives are assigned to a specific subject that deals with the knowledge and skills fundamentally needed to accomplish the subject objective.

Note: For training organisations required to comply with **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340**, the subjects, topics and sub-topics are mandatory, whereas the subject objectives and training objectives provided as acceptable means of compliance with the regulation.

Topics, sub-topics and objectives are organised and sequenced within each subject in order to facilitate the analysis of the document. One main purpose is to make visible the commonalities and differences between the syllabi. This clustering is not a chronological sequence. The structure of the CCC does not dictate the structure of a training course.

The number of objectives contained within a sub-topic does not necessarily signify how long it should take to teach that sub-topic. (For example, a sub-topic containing five relatively straightforward objectives, may take a shorter period of time to teach, than another sub-topic containing two complex objectives.)

Each subject is shown as a header to a table. The subject objective is attached to this header.

Topics and sub-topics are laid out in rows. Sub-topics contain objectives. An objective consists of a corpus, taxonomy level and content.

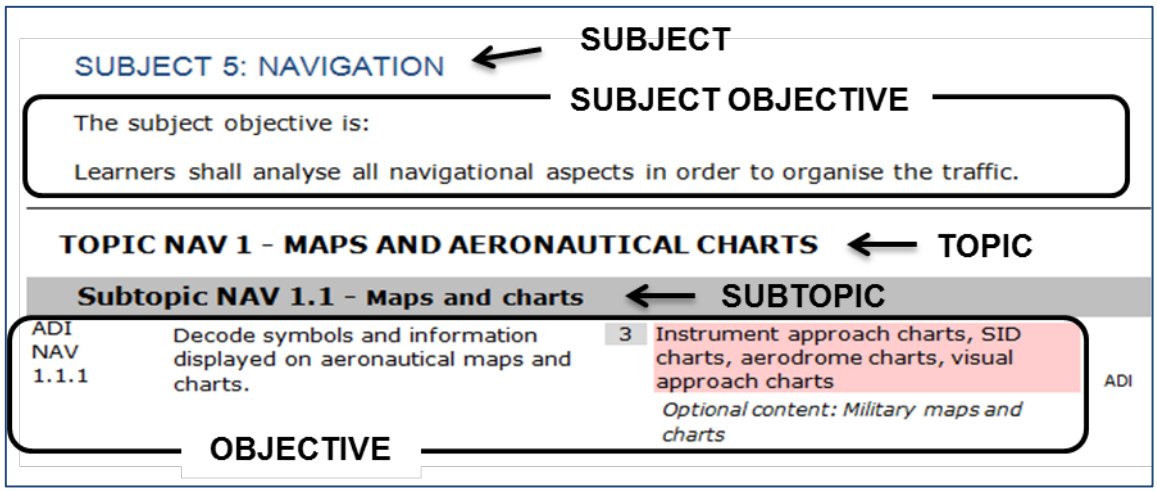


Figure 5: CCC Syllabus lay-out

Objectives are also laid out in rows consisted of three parts:

- The first part shows the objective number and corpus;
- The second part shows the taxonomy level;
- The third part shows the content (explicit or implicit) with a clear indication which items of the content are mandatory (the red and blue shaded areas) and which are optional (*small italics*).

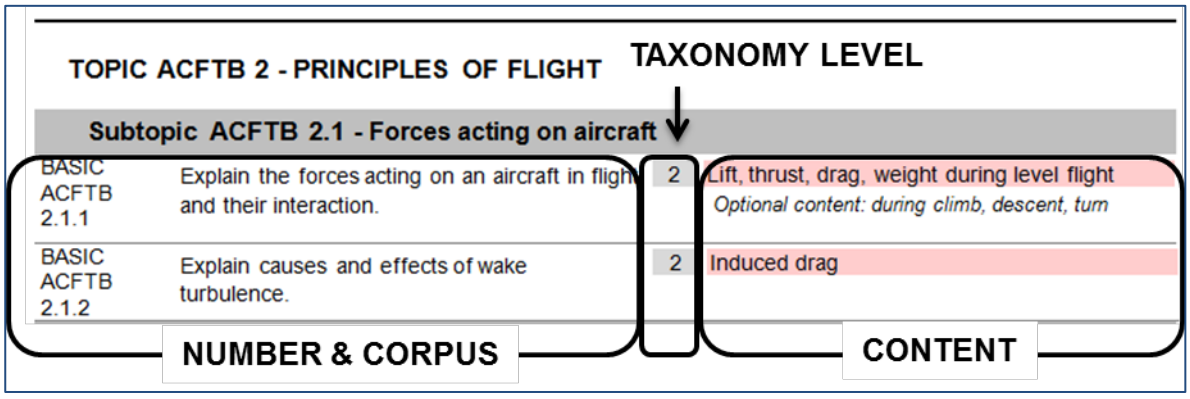


Figure 6: A CCC objective consists of a corpus, taxonomy level and content

6.5 *Objectives terminology and use*

The CCC syllabi refer to two categories of training objectives which are defined below:

Subject Objective:		Describes the direction to move in rather than a detailed quantitative objective
Objective:		A clear statement based on a corpus, level and content.
	Corpus:	A description of the required performance. It always contains an action verb to ensure that the outcome is observable. The action verb is always associated with a defined taxonomy.
	Level:	Highlights numerically the taxonomy level of the action verb.
	Content:	May be implicit or explicit. (This concept will be explained below).

6.5.1 Corpus

The corpus is a description of the required performance. Where possible, objectives relate to single activities.

6.5.2 Level

The level contained in this column, relates directly to a defined taxonomy for classifying training objectives. The level is always associated with an action verb contained within the corpus.

There are five levels that are defined as follows:

Level 1	A basic knowledge of the subject. It is the ability to remember essential points, to memorise data and retrieve it.
Level 2	The ability to understand and to discuss the subject matter intelligently in order to represent and act upon certain objects and events.
Level 3	A thorough knowledge of the subject and the ability to apply it with accuracy. The ability to make use of the repertoire of knowledge to develop plans and activate them.
Level 4	The ability to establish a line of action within a unit of known applications following the correct chronology and the adequate method to resolve a problem situation. This involves the integration of known applications in a familiar situation.
Level 5	The ability to analyse new situations in order to elaborate and apply one or other relevant strategy to solve a complex problem. The defining feature is that the situation is qualitatively different to those previous met, requiring judgement and evaluation of options.

The complete list of action verbs used in this document with the appropriate examples is given in Appendix 1.

6.5.2.1 Application of taxonomy levels to practically based objectives

Objectives at taxonomy level 3 or higher, which are of a practical nature, related to all subjects except ATM, may be achieved by any suitable type of practical training methods e.g. hands on, plotting on charts etc.

Objectives at taxonomy level 3 or higher, for the ATM subject (Basic and Rating), are by their nature practical and require the integration of several knowledge areas and skills at the same time, e.g. vectoring of an aircraft requires knowledge and skills in the areas of radio telephony, aircraft performance, navigation and radar theory.

Therefore, ATM level 3 objectives shall be achieved through the use of a part task trainer or a simulator.

ATM level 4 objectives shall be achieved for the most part through the use of a simulator. A part task trainer, which presents operational situations at an enforced pace, may be used to achieve some ATM level 4 objectives.

ATM level 5 objectives shall be achieved through the use of a simulator.

Note 1: All references in this document, to the Controller Working Position, refer to the position in the simulator or PTT, as Initial training is not conducted in the live operational environment.

Note 2: A synthetic training device[1] means any type of device by which operational conditions are simulated, including simulators and part-task trainers.

Note 3: A simulator[2] means a synthetic training device that presents the important features of the real operational environment and reproduces the operational conditions under which the person undertaking training can practice real-time tasks directly.

Note 4: A part-task trainer[3] means a synthetic training device to provide training for specific and selected operational tasks without requiring the learner to practice all of the tasks which are normally associated with a fully operational environment.

6.5.3 Content

The content illustrates and details the performance.

The content may be implicit and explicit. The explicit content is what is written in the content field proper to the objective, while the implicit content is not written in the content field of each objective but rather implied in the corpus of the objective and other elements (syllabus, subject, etc.).

Some conventions are applied to the wording of the explicit content:

- When the items are in a list, each of them is to be addressed. (According to the basic principles of CCC, local items may however be added subject to local training designer judgement.)
- In a list, items following the phrase **Optional Content** are not mandatory but are provided more as an illustration of the performance than a detailed specification.

Even when all of the items are optional the objective has to be performed according to the action verb included.

For example, an ATM objective is

APS ATM 6.5.3	Provide horizontal separation by vectoring in a variety of situations.	4	*Optional content: transit, meteorological phenomena, vectoring for approach, departure vs transit vs arrival*	APS ACS

Figure 7: CCC ATM objective with the optional content

The list of situations described above is preceded by 'Optional content' – this list enables flexibility for the choice of the situations but does not intend to minimise the performance of radar vectoring.

In addition to the above mentioned conventions the content is divided in two (or sometimes three) rows with a clear indication which items of the content are mandatory (the red and blue shaded areas) and which are optional (*small italics*).

When the mandatory content is contained in a red shaded area and there is no blue shaded area, then all the items are mandatory for all training organisations, irrespective of whether they are required to comply with **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340**.

When there is mandatory content in both a red and a blue shaded area, then the red shaded area items are mandatory for training organisations complying with ***Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340*** and associated AMCs, and the blue shaded area items are mandatory for training organisations not required to make reference to EU legislation.

[1] Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340
[2] Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340
[3] Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340

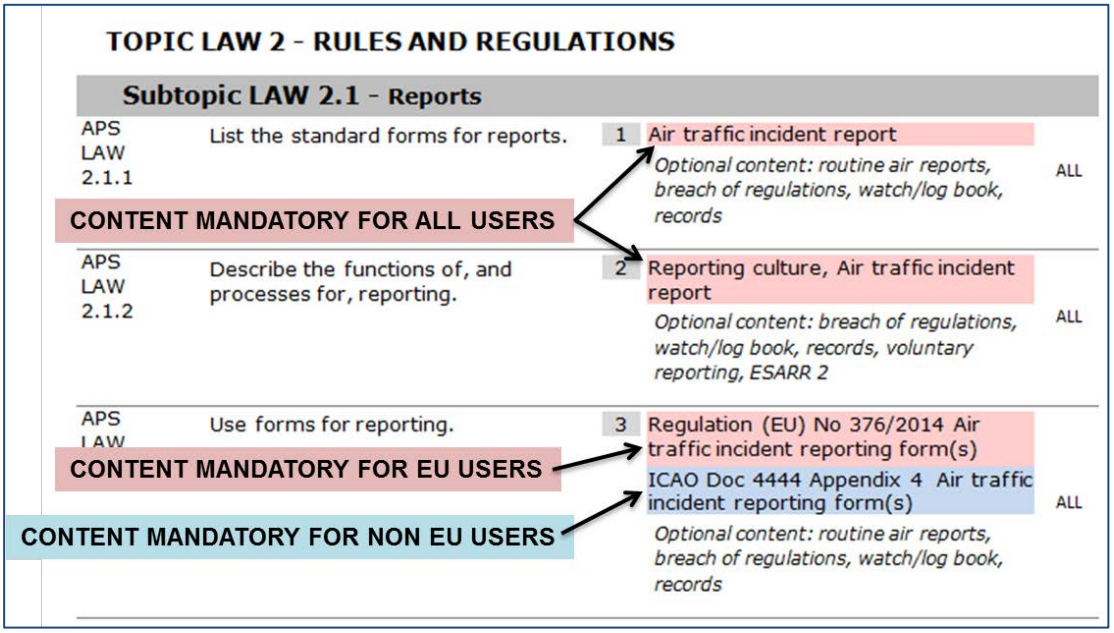


Figure 8: Clear indication of mandatory and optional content

6.5.4 References

For training organisations complying with **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340**:

- Whenever an objective or its content refers to an EU regulation, an EASA Executive Director decision (primarily for AMCs) or ICAO Standards and Recommended Practices, users shall take care to use the most recent version of the referenced document/s, or its parts.
- If an objective or its content is governed by National regulations or practices which differ from ICAO and/or SERA[4], the National regulations and practical application may **complement** the ICAO practices.

For stakeholders not required to comply with **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340**:

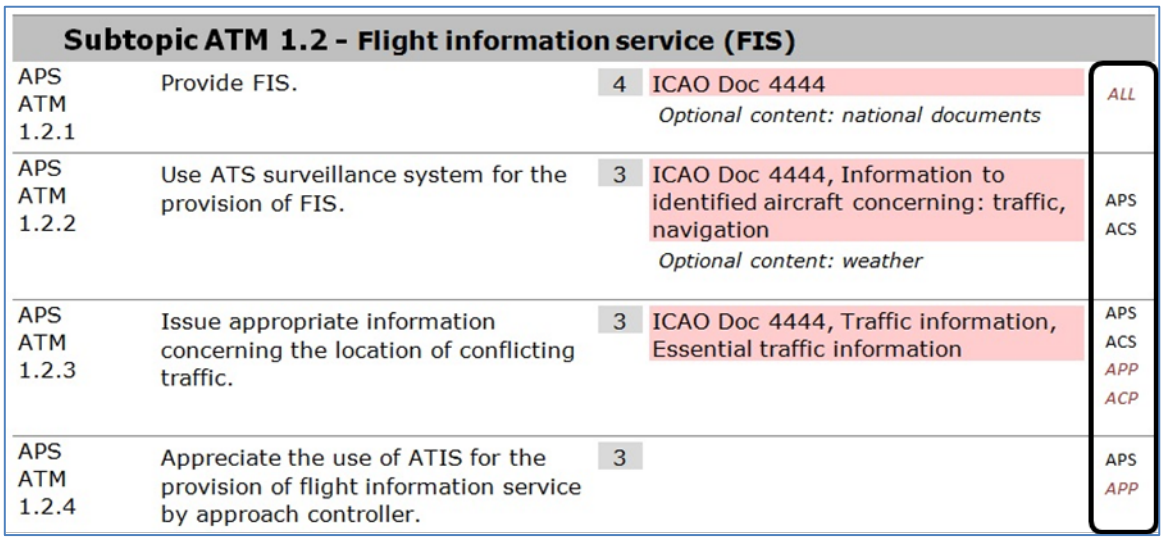
- Whenever an objective or its content refers to ICAO Standards and Recommended Practices, users shall take care to use the most recent version of the referenced document/s, or its parts.
- If an objective or its content is governed by National regulations or practices which differ from ICAO, the National regulations may be taught instead of ICAO and, as appropriate, applied practically to ensure pedagogical consistency with further unit training. This difference shall be notified to the learner, and when practicable, should be explained.

[4] SERA - COMMISSION IMPLEMENTING REGULATION (EU) No 923/2012 of 26 September 2012 laying down the common rules of the air and operational provisions regarding services and procedures in air navigation

6.6 *Repeated and common objectives*

Repeated and common objectives are only applicable to Rating Training syllabi.

To the right of each objective there is an indication of which other ratings contain this particular objective. If the rating is indicated in red italics, it notifies the reader that the objective/s are verbatim in each rating however the objective numbers are different. This indication is the first step to help the training providers in identifying the potential commonalities between the various syllabi. As a second step, the training provider must determine, at the level of local implementation, whether the objective is to be regarded as repeated or common.



Subtopic ATM 1.2 - Flight information service (FIS)				
APS ATM 1.2.1	Provide FIS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	*ALL*
APS ATM 1.2.2	Use ATS surveillance system for the provision of FIS.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, Information to identified aircraft concerning: traffic, navigation *Optional content: weather*	APS ACS
APS ATM 1.2.3	Issue appropriate information concerning the location of conflicting traffic.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, Traffic information, Essential traffic information	APS ACS *APP* *ACP*
APS ATM 1.2.4	Appreciate the use of ATIS for the provision of flight information service by approach controller.	3		APS *APP*

Figure 9: Indication of the ratings that particular objective applies to.

6.6.1 Repeated Objectives

All the objectives appearing in a syllabus are implicitly appropriate to this syllabus. As a consequence, objectives may be repeated 'verbatim' in different syllabi and nevertheless specify a different performance. The reader always needs to mentally add the sentence 'in this syllabus context' at the end of each objective.

For example, the objective 'use approved phraseology' is repeated (same level, same corpus, same content) in all the syllabi but is different because the context is different in each syllabus (a learner able to use approved phraseology for en-route traffic will need additional training before mastering the phraseology in the provision of aerodrome control).

6.6.2 Common Objectives

Common objectives are verbatim the same objectives that appear in more than one syllabi in the same context so that they do not need to be taught again in case of combined or successively organised courses.

For example, the objective 'describe the human information processing model' is common for all the syllabi because the context is non-specific and is therefore not determined by the type of rating.

6.7 *Performance objective*

The scope of this specification is limited to subject objectives and objectives related to sub-topics, however it is necessary, at some point, to assess if a learner has achieved the objectives defined in the training. This may be done through the setting of and assessment of performance objectives in the training plans.

Performance objective: A clear and unambiguous statement of the **performance** expected by the learner, the **conditions** under which the performance takes place and the **standards** that learner should meet.

Note: For organisations complying with **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340** -

- ATCO.D.025 Basic training examinations and assessments,
- ATCO.D.030 Basic training performance objectives,
- ATCO.D.035 Rating training examinations and assessments and
- ATCO.D.040 Rating training performance objectives

are applicable.

REFERENCES

- COMMISSION IMPLEMENTING REGULATION (EU) No 923/2012 of 26 September 2012 laying down the common rules of the air and operational provisions regarding services and procedures in air navigation and amending Implementing Regulation (EU) No 1035/2011 and Regulations (EC) No 1265/2007, (EC) No 1794/2006, (EC) No 730/2006, (EC) No 1033/2006 and (EU) No 255/2010
- REGULATION (EC) No 216/2008 OF THE EUROPEAN PARLIAMENT AND OF THE COUNCIL of 20 February 2008 on common rules in the field of civil aviation and establishing a European Aviation Safety Agency, and repealing Council Directive 91/670/EEC, Regulation (EC) No 1592/2002 and Directive 2004/36/E
- Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340 of 20 February 2015 laying down technical requirements and administrative procedures relating to air traffic controllers' licences and certificates
- COMMISSION REGULATION (EC) No 2150/2005 of 23 December 2005 laying down common rules for the flexible use of airspace
- REGULATION (EC) No 549/2004 OF THE EUROPEAN PARLIAMENT AND OF THE COUNCIL of 10 March 2004 laying down the framework for the creation of the single European sky (the framework Regulation)
- REGULATION (EC) No 551/2004 OF THE EUROPEAN PARLIAMENT AND OF THE COUNCIL of 10 March 2004 on the organisation and use of the airspace in the single European sky
- COMMISSION IMPLEMENTING REGULATION (EU) No 1034/2011 of 17 October 2011 on safety oversight in air traffic management and air navigation services and amending Regulation (EU) No 691/2010
- COMMISSION IMPLEMENTING REGULATION (EU) No 1035/2011 of 17 October 2011 laying down common requirements for the provision of air navigation services and amending Regulations (EC) No 482/2008 and (EU) No 691/2010
- COMMISSION REGULATION (EU) No 1332/2011 of 16 December 2011 laying down common airspace usage requirements and operating procedures for airborne collision avoidance
- COMMISSION REGULATION (EU) No 139/2014 of 12 February 2014 laying down requirements and administrative procedures related to aerodromes pursuant to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council
- REGULATION (EC) No 1899/2006 OF THE EUROPEAN PARLIAMENT AND OF THE COUNCIL of 12 December 2006 amending Council Regulation (EEC) No 3922/91 on the harmonisation of technical requirements and administrative procedures in the field of civil aviation
- EASA DECISION 2014/012/R OF THE EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR OF THE AGENCY of 27 February 2014 adopting Acceptable Means of Compliance and Guidance Material to Regulation (EU) No 139/20 'AMC/GM for Aerodromes – Initial Issue'
- EASA DECISION 2014/013/R OF THE EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR OF THE AGENCY of 27 February 2014 adopting Certification Specifications and Guidance Material for Aerodromes Design CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue'
- COMMISSION REGULATION (EU) No 255/2010 of 25 March 2010 laying down common rules on air traffic flow management

- REGULATION (EU) No 376/2014 OF THE EUROPEAN PARLIAMENT AND OF THE COUNCIL of 3 April 2014 on the reporting, analysis and follow-up of occurrences in civil aviation, amending Regulation (EU) No 996/2010 of the European Parliament and of the Council and repealing Directive 2003/42/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council and Commission Regulations (EC) No 1321/2007 and (EC) No 1330/2007
- COMMISSION REGULATION (EC) No 2150/2005 of 23 December 2005 laying down common rules for the flexible use of airspace
- COMMISSION REGULATION (EC) No 730/2006 of 11 May 2006 on airspace classification and access of flights operated under visual flight rules above flight level 195
- Directive 2006/23/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 5 April 2006 on a Community air traffic controller licence
- Commission Regulation (EU) No 805/2011 of 10 August 2011 laying down rules for air traffic controllers' licences and certain certificates
- ICAO Annex 1 (2011). Personnel Licensing. 11th Ed.
- ICAO Annex 2 (2005). Rules of the Air. 10th Ed.
- ICAO Annex 3 (2013). Meteorological Service for International Air Navigation. 18th Ed.
- ICAO Annex 5 (2010). Units of Measurement to be Used in Air and Ground Operations. 5th Ed.
- ICAO Annex 10 (2001). Aeronautical Telecommunications. Vol. II 6th Ed.
- ICAO Annex 11 (2001). Air Traffic Services. 13th Ed.
- ICAO Annex 14 (2013). Aerodromes. Vol. I 6th Ed.
- ICAO Annex 15 (2010). Aeronautical Information Services. 13th Ed.
- ICAO Annex 16 (2011). Environmental Protection. 6th Ed.
- ICAO Doc 4444 (2007). Air Traffic Management. 15th Ed.
- ICAO Doc 7030 (2008). Regional Supplementary Procedures. 5th Ed. and Amendment 9 (Apr 2014) incl.
- ICAO Doc 7910 (2013). Location Indicators. 147th Ed.
- ICAO Doc 8168 (2006). Aircraft Operations. 5th Ed. Vol. I & II.
- ICAO Doc 8400 (2010). ICAO Abbreviations and Codes. 8th Ed.
- ICAO Doc 8585 (2013). Designators for Aircraft Operating Agencies. 164th Ed.
- ICAO Doc 8643 (2014). Aircraft Type Designators.
- ICAO Doc 9161 (2013). Manual of Air Navigation Services Economics. 5th Ed.
- ICAO Doc 9432 (2007). Manual of Radiotelephony. 4th Ed.
- ICAO Doc 9554 (1990). Manual Concerning Safety Measures Relating to Military Activities Potentially Hazardous to Civil Aircraft Operations. 1st Ed.
- ICAO Doc 9613 (2013). Performance-based Navigation (PBN) Manual. 4th Ed.
- ICAO Doc 9683 (1998). Human Factors Training Manual. 1st Ed.
- ICAO Doc 9694 (1999). Manual of ATS Data Link Applications. 1st Ed.
- ICAO Doc 9863 (2012). Airborne Collision Avoidance System (ACS) Manual. 2nd Ed.

- ICAO Circular 241 (1993). AN/145 Human factors in Air Traffic Control
- ICAO Circular 314 (2008). AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control
- EUROCONTROL Safety Regulation Commission (SRC) (2002a). EUROCONTROL Safety Regulatory Requirements (ESARR) – ESARR5: Safety Regulatory Requirement for ATM Services' Personnel. Ed. 2.0. Brussels: EUROCONTROL.
- EATCHIP Human Resources Team (1996a) – HF1. Model for Task and Job Descriptions of Air Traffic Controllers. HUM.ET1.ST01.1000-REP-01. Ed. 1.0. Released Issue. Brussels: EUROCONTROL.
- EATCHIP Human Resources Team (1996b) – HF2. Guidelines for Developing and Implementing Team Resource Management. HUM.ET1.ST10.1000-GUI-01. Ed. 1.0. Released Issue. Brussels: EUROCONTROL.
- EATCHIP Human Resources Team (1996c) – HF4. Human Factors Module - Stress. HUM.ET1.ST13.2000-REP-01. Ed. 1.0. Released Issue. Brussels: EUROCONTROL.
- EATCHIP Human Resources Team (1997) – HF9. Human Factors Module - Critical Incident Stress Management. HUM.ET1.ST13.3000-REP-01. Ed. 1.0. Released Issue. Brussels: EUROCONTROL.
- EATMP Human Resources Team (2000) – T16. Specifications on Training Methods and Tools. HRS/TSP-006-GUI-01. Ed.1.0. Released Issue. Brussels: EUROCONTROL.
- EATM Human Resources Team (2003a) – T11. Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations HRS/TSP-004-GUI-05. Ed. 2.0. Released Issue. Brussels: EUROCONTROL.
- EUROCONTROL Safety Regulation Commission (SRC) (2000). EUROCONTROL Safety Regulatory Requirements (ESARR) – ESARR2: Reporting and Assessment of Safety Occurrences in ATM. Ed. 2.0. Brussels: EUROCONTROL.
- Hopkin, V.D. (1995). Human Factors in Air Traffic Control. ISBN 074840357. London: Taylor & Francis.
- Isaac, A., with Ruitenberg, B. (1999). Air Traffic Control - Human Performance Factors. Aldershot: Ashgate.

Page intentionally left blank

ABBREVIATIONS

For purposes of this document and its Annexes, the following abbreviations and acronyms shall apply:

ABAS	Aircraft-based Augmentation System (EGNOS)
ABES	Abnormal and Emergency Situations (subject)
ACARS	Aircraft Communications Addressing and Reporting System
ACAS	Airborne Collision Avoidance System
ACC	Area Control Centre
ACCCT TF	ATCO Common Core Content Training Task Force
ACFT	Aircraft (subject)
ACFTB	Aircraft Basic (subject)
ACN	Aircraft Classification Number
ACP	Area Control Procedural Rating
ACS	Area Control Surveillance Rating
ADF	Automatic Direction Finding System
ADI	Aerodrome Control Instrument Rating
ADR	Aerodrome
ADS	Automatic Dependent Surveillance
ADS-B	Automatic Dependent Surveillance - Broadcast
ADS-C	Automatic Dependent Surveillance - Contract
ADV	Aerodrome Control Visual Rating
ADVS	Advisory Service
AEA	Association of European Airlines
AFIL	Air Filed Flight Plan
AFTN	Aeronautical fixed telecommunication network
AGA	Aerodromes subject
AIC	Aeronautical Information Circular
AIP	Aeronautical Information Publication
AIR	Air Control
AIRAC	Aeronautical Information Regulation and Control
AIRAC SUP	AIRAC Supplement
AIREP	Air-Report
AIRMET	Information concerning en-route weather phenomena which may affect the safety of low-level aircraft operations
AIS	Aeronautical Information Service

ALRS	Alerting Service
AMC	Acceptable Means of Compliance
APM	Approach Path Monitor
APP	Approach Control (Procedural) Rating / Approach Control/Centre
APS	Approach Control Surveillance Rating
APV	Approach Procedure with Vertical guidance
APW	Area Proximity Warning
A-RNP	Advanced Required Navigation Performance
ASDA	Accelerate Stop Distance Available
ASM	Airspace Management
ASMGCS	Advanced Surface Movement Guidance and Control Systems
ATC	Air Traffic Control
ATCEUC	Air Traffic Controllers European Union's Co-ordination
ATCO	Air Traffic Controller / Air Traffic Control Officer
ATCS	Air Traffic Control Service
ATFCM	Air Traffic Flow and Capacity Management
ATFM	Air Traffic Flow Management
ATIS	Automatic Terminal Information Service
ATM	Air Traffic Management
ATMB	Air Traffic Management Basic (subject)
ATM003	EASA Rulemaking Group - Requirements on ATCO licensing
ATS	Air Traffic Services
ATZ	Aerodrome Traffic Zone
AVASI	Advanced Visual Approach Slope Indicator
B-RNAV	Basic Area Navigation
BIRDTAM	Bird hazard NOTAM (NOTAM reporting bird hazard)
CANSO	Civil Air Navigation Services Organisation
CAT	Clear Air Turbulence
CBA	Cross Border Area
CBT	Computer Based Training
CCC	Common Core Content
CDR	Conditional Route
CDO	Continuous Descent Operations
CEM	Collaborative Environmental Management
CISM	Critical Incident Stress Management
CPDLC	Controller Pilot Data Link Communications
CPL	Current Flight Plan

CS-ADR-DSN Certification Specifications and Guidance Material for Aerodromes Design

CWP	Controller Working Position
D-GPS	Differential Global Positioning System
DCL	Departure Clearance
DFTI	Distance from Touchdown Indicator
DME	Distance Measuring Equipment
DMAN	Departure Manager
Doc	Document
EAM	ESARR Advisory Material
EASA	European Aviation Safety Agency
EAT	Expected Approach Time
EATCHIP	European Air Traffic Control Harmonisation and Integration Programme
EATMP	European Air Traffic Management Programme (later 'EATM')
ECAC	European Civil Aviation Conference
EC	European Commission
ED	Executive Director (EASA)
ECAC	European Civil Aviation Conference
EET	Estimated Elapsed Time
EFIS	Electronic Flight Instrument System
EGNOS	European Geostationary Overlay Service
(E)GPWS	Enhanced Ground Proximity Warning System
EQPS	Equipment and Systems (subject)
EQPSB	Equipment and Systems Basic (subject)
ESARR	Eurocontrol Safety Regulatory Requirement
ETF	European Transport Workers' Federation
EU	European Union
EU ETS	European Union Emissions Trading Scheme
EUROCONTROL	European Organisation for the Safety of Air Navigation
FAB	Functional Airspace Block
FAF	Final Approach Fix
FAP	Final Approach Point
FDPS	Flight Data Processing System
FIR	Flight Information Region
FIS	Flight Information Service
FMS	Flight Management System
FPB	Flight Progress Board
FPL	Flight Plan
FRA	Free Route Airspace
FRT	Fixed Radius Transition

FTE	Flight Technical Error
FUA	Flexible Use of Airspace
GAIN Report	Global Aviation Information Network Report
GBAS	Ground Based Augmentation System
GLONASS	Global Orbiting Navigation Satellite System
GNSS	Global Navigation Satellite System
GP	Glide Path
GPS	Global Positioning System
GPWS	Ground Proximity Warning System
GUI	Guidelines
GMC	Ground Movement Control
GMS	Ground Movement Surveillance
HBK	Handbook
HF	High Frequency
HFACS	Human Factors Analysis & Classification System
HRS	Human Resources Programme (EATM(P))
HRT	Human Resources Team (EATCHIP/EATM(P))
HUM	Human Factors (subject)
HUMB	Human Factors Basic (subject)
IACA	International Air Carrier Association
IAF	Initial Approach Fix
IANS	EUROCONTROL Institute of Air Navigation Services (Luxembourg)
IAOPA	International Council of Aircraft Owner and Pilot Associations
IATA	International Air Transport Association
ICAO	International Civil Aviation Organization
IF	Intermediate Fix
IFALPA	International Federation of Airline Pilots' Association
IFATCA	International Federation of Air Traffic Controllers' Associations
IFPS	Integrated Initial Flight Plan Processing System
IFR	Instrument Flight Rules
ILS	Instrument Landing System
IMC	Instrument Meteorological Conditions
INS	Inertial Navigation System
INTR	Introduction to the course (subject)
INTRB	Introduction to the course Basic (subject)
IRS	Inertial Reference System
IRVR	Instrument Runway Visual Range
ISA	International Standard Atmosphere

ITU	International Telecommunications Union
LAM	Local Area Multilateration
LAW	Aviation Law (subject)
LAWB	Aviation Law Basic (subject)
LDA	Landing Distance Available
LLZ	Localizer
LNAV	Lateral Navigation
LOA	Letter of Agreement
LPV	Lateral Precision with Vertical guidance approach
MAPt	Missed Approach Point
MET	Meteorology
METAR	Meteorological Aviation Routine Weather Report
METB	Meteorology Basic (subject)
MLAT	Multilateration
MLS	Microwave Landing System
Mode A	SSR identification code
Mode C	SSR Mode C (Pronounced: Mode Charlie)
Mode S	Mode Select
MONA	Monitoring Aids
MSAW	Minimum Safe Altitude Warning
MTCD	Medium Term Conflict Detection
MWO	Meteorological Watch Office
NAV	Navigation (subject)
NAVAID	Navigation(al) Aid
NAVB	Navigation Basic (subject)
NDB	Non-Directional Beacon
NMD	Network Manager Directorate
No.	Number
NOTAM	Notice to Airmen
NPA	Non-precision Approach
NSE	Navigation System Error
OCN	Oceanic Control
OJT	On-the-Job Training
OJTI	On-the-Job Training Instructor
OLDI	On-Line Data Interchange
P-RNAV	Precision Area Navigation
PANS	Procedures for Air Navigation Services (ICAO)
PAPI	Precision Approach Path Indicator

PAR	Precision Approach Radar
PBN	Performance Based Navigation
PCN	Pavement Classification Number
PDE	Path Definition Error
PEAR (model)	**P**eople who do the job; **E**nvironment in which they work; **A**ctions they perform; and **R**esources necessary to complete the job
PEN	Professional Environment (subject)
PENB	Professional Environment Basic (subject)
PRD	Prohibited/Restricted/Dangerous (areas)
PSR	Primary Surveillance Radar
PTP	Part Time Practice
PTT	Part Task Trainer
QDM	Magnetic Heading
QDR	Magnetic Bearing
QFE	Atmospheric pressure at aerodrome elevation
QNH	Atmospheric pressure at mean sea level
QTF	The position of the transmitting station according to the bearings taken by the D/F station
RAD	Radar Control
RAIM	Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring
RCC	Rescue Coordination Centre
RDPS	Radar Data Processing System
RF	Radius to Fix
RNAV	Area Navigation
RNP	Required Navigation Performance
RNP-RNAV	Required Navigation Performance-Area Navigation
ROC	Rate of Climb
RPL	Stored Flight Plan
RTF	Radio Telephony
RVR	Runway Visual Range
RVSM	Reduced Vertical Separation Minimum
SADIS	Satellite Distribution of World Area Forecast System
SAR	Search and Rescue
SARPs	Standards and Recommended Practices (ICAO)
SBAS	Satellite Based Augmentation System
SELCAL	Selective Calling
SERA	Standardised European Rules of the Air
SES	Single European Sky

SHELL (model)	Software, Hardware, Environment, Live ware, Live ware Model
SID	Standard Instrument Departure (Route)
SIGMET	Significant Meteorological Information
SMAN	Surface Manager
SMR	Surface Movement Radar
SMS	Safety Management System
SNOWTAM	NOTAM on SNOW conditions
SOP	Standard Operating Procedure
SPECI	Aviation Selected Special Weather Report
SRA	Surveillance Radar Approach
SRC	Safety Regulation Commission
SRU	Safety Regulation Unit
SSR	Secondary Surveillance Radar
STAR	Standard Terminal Arrival Route
STCA	Short Term Conflict Alert
SUPs	Supplements
SVFR	Special Visual Flight Rules Flight
TACAN	UHF Tactical Air Navigation Aid
TAF	Terminal Area (Aerodrome) Forecast
TAWS	Terrain Awareness & Warning System
TCAC	Tropical Cyclone Advisory Centre
TCL	Terminal Control
TEM	Threat and Error Management
TF-CCC	Task Force Common Core Content (EATCHIP/EATM(P), HRT, TSG/TFG)
TMA	Terminal Area Control
TFG	Training Focus-Group (EATM, HRT; formerly known as ‘TSG’)
TODA	Take Off Distance Available
TORA	Take Off Run Available
TRA	Temporary Reserved Area
TRM	Team Resource Management
TSA	Temporary Segregated Area
TSE	Total System Error
TST	Training Support and Tools Unit (EUROCONTROL, IANS)
TWR	Tower (Control) Unit (Aerodrome Control Tower)
UAS	Unmanned Aircraft System
UDF	Ultra High Frequency Direction Finder
UHF	Ultra High Frequency
UTC	Coordinated Universal Time

VAAC	Volcanic Ash Advisory Centre
VASI	Visual Approach Slope Indicator
VDF	Very High Frequency Direction Finder
VFR	Visual Flight Rules
VHF	Very High Frequency
VMC	Visual Meteorological Conditions
VNAV	Vertical Navigation
VOLMET	Routine Weather Reports Broadcast on VHF
VOR	VHF Omni-directional Radio Range
WAM	Wide Area Multilateration
WAFC	World Area Forecast Centre
WAFS	World Area Forecast System
WGS-84	World Geodetic System 84

CONTRIBUTORS

ATCO COMMON CORE CONTENT TRAINING TASK FORCE (ACCCT TF)

NAME	STATE / ORGANISATION
CHAIRMAN	
Mr. Vladimir BUBALO	EUROCONTROL
MEMBERS	
Mr. Max BEZZINA	SENASA, Spain
Mr. Branimir CHORBOV	BULATSA, Bulgaria
Ms. Sophie COPPIN	ENAC - FABEC
Mr. Luigi D'IDDIO	ETF
Mr. Klaudiusz DYBOWSKI	PANSA, Poland
Mr. Plamen GEORGIEV	BULATSA, Bulgaria
Mr. Fabio GRASSO	EASA
Mr. Christian HAUSER	Austro Control, FABCE
Ms. Fiona HOUGH	EPN
Mr. Ian JOHNS	NATS, UK
Mr. Thomas Karlström	FINAVIA, Finland
Mr. Volodymyr KOLOTUSHA	UkSATSE, Ukraine
Ms. Ashley LAURYSSEN	EUROCONTROL
Mr. Dragan MILANOVSKI	EUROCONTROL
Mr. Manfred MORITZ	DFS - FABEC
Mr. David PICHL	ANS CR, FABCE
Mr. Roberto QUARTO	ENAV, Italy
Ms. Ravo RANDRIA	DGAC, France
Mr. Charles RIZZO	MUAC - FABEC
Mr. Valeri SALNIKOV	NATS, UK
Ms. Julie SCHERER	CAA SARG, UK
Mr. Javier VEGA MUNOZ	SENASA, Spain
Mr. Gabriel VIRLAN	CAA – Danube FAB
Secretarial assistance	
Ms. Nadine BAUM	EUROCONTROL

Page intentionally left blank

APPENDIX 1 –The use of Action Verbs

1. Taxonomy

A taxonomy is a classification based on explicit principles. The purpose of taxonomies in the training domain is to classify training objectives.

2. The use of Action Verbs

Defining action verbs becomes increasingly difficult as the level increases for several reasons:

(i) Higher levels (4, 5 and even 3) are the culmination of many actions, and can only be described by either a breakdown into component actions or by a few high-level words, which are not exclusive to a particular level.

(ii) Making some verbs belong to several levels could compound this. This solution was rejected in order to keep things simple for the operational use (one verb - one level).

(iii) The main difference between levels 4 and 5 is novelty (qualitative) of the problem.

(iv) As each level subsumes those previous to it, as it is hierarchical, then you must naturally start running out of words.

The following list is not complete, but a guideline only. In the future ATM-specific terms known to refer to required level of performance can be added. The examples chosen to illustrate the verbs are specific to ATCO environment and mostly quoted from the ATCO CCC Initial Training Specification.

3. Action Verbs

3.1 *Definition of verbs – Level 1*

Level 1:	A basic knowledge of the subject. It is the ability to remember essential points, to memorise data and retrieve it.

L1 Verb	Definition	Example
Define	State what it is and what its limits are; state the definition	Define ATC service
Draw	Produce a picture, pattern or diagram	Draw the block diagram Draw a holding pattern
List	Say one after the other	List the main structure components of an aircraft
Name	Give name of objects or procedures	Name the components of an ILS Name the key national and international aviation organisations.
Quote	Repeat what is written or said	Quote ICAO definition of ATC service

Recognise	To know what it is because you've seen it before	Recognise the information contained in the different parts of the AIP.
State	Say or write in a formal or definite way	State the meteorological hazards to aviation.

3.2 *Definition of verbs – Level 2*

Level 2: The ability to understand and to discuss the subject matter intelligently in order to represent and act upon certain objects and events.

L2 Verb	Definition	Example
Characterise	To describe the quality of features in something	Characterise the main items of ATC equipment
Consider	To think carefully about it	Consider the benefits of Critical Incident Stress Management (CISM).
Demonstrate	Describe and explain; logically or mathematically provethe truth of a statement	Demonstrate the importance of good communications in ATC.
Describe	Say what it is like or what happened	Describe the methods by which ICAO notifies and implements legislation.
Differentiate	Show the differences between things	Differentiate between different types of visibility.
Explain	Give details about something or describe so that it can be understood	Explain the purpose and function of ICAO
Take account of	Take into consideration before deciding	Take account of the wind influence when calculating a ground speed. Take account of the limitations of equipment and systems.

3.3 *Definition of verbs – Level 3*

Level 3:	A thorough knowledge of the subject and the ability to apply it with accuracy. The ability to make use of the repertoire of knowledge to develop plans and activate them.

L3 Verb	Definition	Example
Act	Carry out, execute	Act to reduce stress.
Apply	Use something in a situation or activity	Apply separation.
Appreciate	To understand a situation and know what is involved in a problem-solving situation, to state a plan without applying it	Appreciate the necessity for coordination. (The learner says that the coordination will be done and with whom, he/she does not perform the actual coordination).
Assist	Help somebody to do a job by doing part of it	Assist the pilot
Calculate	To discover from information you already have by arithmetic; to think about a possible cause of action in order to form an opinion or decide what to do	Calculate appropriate levels Calculate conversions between the three north designations.
Check	Make sure the information is correct (satisfactory)	Check the accuracy of flight data information Check availability of information material.
Choose	Select out of number, decide to do one thing rather than another	Choose appropriate levels. Choose which aircraft should be vectored
Collect	Assemble, accumulate, bring or come together	Collect examples of different types of error, their causes and consequences in ATC.
Conduct	Organise and carry out	Conduct coordination
Confirm	Establish more firmly, corroborate	Confirm sequence order
Decode	Turn into ordinary writing, decipher	Decode the content of weather reports and forecast
Encode	Put into code or cipher	Encode and decode flight plans (including supplementary information).
Estimate	Form an approximate judgement of a number, form an opinion	Estimate distance and direction between two points
Execute	Perform action	Execute corrective actions.
Extract	Copy out, make extracts from, find, deduce	Extract pertinent data from relevant sources to produce a flight progress display.
Identify	Associate oneself inseparably with, establish the identity	Identify the role of ATC as a service provider and the requirements of

L3 Verb	Definition	Example
		the ATS users. Identify an aircraft
Inform	Tell. Give facts or information	Inform supervisor of situation.
Initiate	Begin, set going, originate	Initiate appropriate coordination
Input	Enter in the system	Input data
Issue	Send forth, publish	Issue appropriate ATC clearances. Issue appropriate traffic information.
Maintain	cause or enable to continue	Maintain flight data display
Measure	Ascertain extent or quality of (thing) by comparison with fixed unit or with object of known size	Measure distance on a map
Monitor	Keep under observation	Monitor traffic Monitor the effect of human information processing factors on decision making.
Notify	Make known, announce, report	Notify runway in use
Obtain	Acquire easily without research	Obtain meteorological information Obtain information from the relieving controller.
Operate	Conduct work on equipment	Operate the equipment of the controller working position.
Pass	Move, cause to go, transmit	Pass essential traffic information without delay
Perform	Carry into effect, go through, execute	Perform communication effectively
Process	To put through the steps of a prescribed procedure	Process pertinent data on data displays.
Record	Register, set down for remembrance or reference	Record information by writing effectively
Relay	Receive and pass on, broadcast	Relay meteorological information from pilot reports.
Respond	Make answer, perform answering or corresponding action	Respond to loss/doubt concerning identification. Respond to distress and urgency messages and signals.
Scan	Continuously observe rapidly, sequentially and selectively in order to extract relevant data	Scan data display
Transfer	Hand over	Transfer information to the relieving controller
Update	Refresh, bring up-to-date	Update the data display to accurately reflect the traffic situation.
Use	Employ for a purpose, handle as	Use approved phraseology.

L3 Verb	Definition	Example
	instrument, put into operation	Use the available means for coordination.
Verify	Establish truth of	Verify the mode C information

3.4 *Definition of verbs – Level 4*

Level 4: Ability to establish a line of action within a unit of known applications following the correct chronology and the adequate methods to resolve a problem situation. This involves the integration of known applications in a familiar situation.

L4 Verb	Definition	Example
Acquire	Gain by oneself and for oneself, obtain after research	Acquire relevant aeronautical information
Adjust	Change to a new position, value or setting	Adjust the surveillance system display
Allocate	Assign, devote	Allocate levels (height, altitude, flight level) according to altimetry data.
Analyse	Examine minutely the constitution of	Analyse examples of pilot and controller communication for effectiveness. Analyse the information provided by the radar equipment.
Assign	Designate or set an element	Assign codes.
Coordinate	Negotiate with others in order to work together effectively	Coordinate runway in use. Coordinate in the provision of FIS.
Comply	Act in accordance with	Comply with rules
Delegate	Commit authority to somebody	Delegate separation to pilots in the case of aircraft executing successive visual approaches.
Detect	Discover existence of	Detect potential conflict
Ensure	Make safe, make certain	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out
Expedite	Assist the progress of, do speedily	Expedite traffic
Integrate	Combine into a whole, complete by addition of parts	Integrate appropriate ATC clearances in control service.
Manage	Handle, , conduct, maintain control over something, be in charge of	Manage traffic on the manoeuvring area. Manage traffic in accordance with procedural changes.
Organise	Give orderly structure to, frame and put into working order	Organise pertinent data on data displays. Organise priority of actions.
Predict	Forecast	Predict positions of aircraft in the aerodrome traffic and taxi circuits.
Provide	Supply, furnish	Provide radar separation. Provide FIS.
Relate	Establish link with	Relate a pressure setting to an altitude

3.5 *Definition of verbs – Level 5*

Level 5:	Ability to analyse new situation in order to elaborate and apply one or other relevant strategy to solve a complex problem. The defining feature is that the situation is qualitatively different to those previously met, requiring judgement and evaluation of options.

L5 verb	Definition	Example
Assess	Estimate value or difficulty, evaluate, appraise	Assess workload
Balance	Weigh (a question, two arguments, etc., against each other)	Balance the workload with the traffic demand.
Discuss	Investigate by reasoning or argument	Discuss the impact of regulation.
Evaluate	Ascertain amount of, find numerical expression for	Evaluate the necessary information to be provided to pilots in need of navigational assistance.
Interpret	To decide on something's meaning or significance when there is a choice	Interpret operational information.
Optimise	To make optimal; get the most out of; use best; modify to achieve maximum efficiency	Optimise the use of support tools.
Resolve	Solve, clear up, settle	Resolve conflict
Select	Pick out as best or most suitable	Select the runway in use
Theorise	Extract general principles from a particular experience	Theorise the resolution of conflict between a slow and a fast aircraft
Validate	Make valid, ratify, prove valid, show or confirm the validity of something	Validate one radar vectoring option to expedite the traffic

ANNEX 1 –Basic training syllabus

ANNEX 2 –Aerodrome Control Visual Rating - ADV

ANNEX 3 –Aerodrome Control Instrument Rating for Tower ADI (TWR)

ANNEX 4 –Approach Control Procedural Rating - APP

ANNEX 5 –Area Control Procedural Rating - ACP

ANNEX 6 –Approach Control Surveillance Rating - APS

ANNEX 7 –Area Control Surveillance Rating - ACS

Note: Annexes are provided as separate documents for convenience. Readers of the paper version will find them associated in the same binder with the main body of text while internet versions are published as separate electronic files.

www.eurocontrol.int

Network Manager
nominated by
the European Commission

EUROCONTROL

EUROCONTROL Specification

EUROCONTROL Specifications for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training

Annex 1: Basic training syllabus

Edition: 2.0
Edition date: 02/04/2015
Reference Number: EUROCONTROL-SPEC-157

EUROPEAN ORGANISATION
FOR THE SAFETY OF AIR NAVIGATION

EUROCONTROL

EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training

Annex 1 – Basic training syllabus

Edition Number	:	2.0
Edition Date	:	02/04/2015
Status	:	Released issue
Intended for	:	NMD Stakeholders

NETWORK MANAGER DIRECTORATE

Page intentionally left blank

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Annex 1 of the EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training V2.0 details the training objectives for the **Basic ATC training**.

For training organisations providing ATCO training to meet the requirements laid down in the **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340 laying down technical requirements and administrative procedures relating to air traffic controllers' licences and certificates**, and the acceptable means of compliance (AMCs) associated with the regulation, this syllabus does not change any of the content in the regulation, but rather provides a document that combines the relevant elements into a familiar user format. For European organisations not required to comply with EU legislation, it provides an **ATC Basic training syllabus** that retains references to ICAO documentation.

Basic training is defined ***as theoretical and practical training designed to impart fundamental knowledge and practical skills related to basic operational procedures.***

The composition and topics were chosen based on the **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340** Annex I — Basic training (Reference: Annex I — Part ATCO Subpart D, Section 2, ATCO.D.010(a)(1)) and ICAO Annex 1 requirements for an Air Traffic Control licence. The structure of the syllabus reflects a logical grouping of objectives into coherent subjects.

The order of subjects and objectives is neither intended to convey a pedagogical sequence nor to indicate a relative level of importance. No recommendation is made in this area. When teaching the objectives, it is envisaged that different training methodologies will be used.

Prior to developing or updating the **Basic training course,** training providers must be familiar with the information contained in the EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training V2.0, particularly Section 6 (How to use this document) which contains, amongst other items, the fundamental principles that are applied to the Specification.

Page intentionally left blank

Contents

Page intentionally left blank

SUBJECT 1: INTRODUCTION TO THE COURSE

The subject objective is:

Learners shall know and understand the training programme that they will follow and how to obtain the appropriate information, and recognise the potential for development of their careers in ATC.

TOPIC INTRB 1 - COURSE MANAGEMENT

Subtopic INTRB 1.1 - Course introduction			
BASIC INTRB 1.1.1	Explain the aims and main objectives of the course.	2	
Subtopic INTRB 1.2 - Course administration			
BASIC INTRB 1.2.1	State course administration.	1	
Subtopic INTRB 1.3 - Study material and training documentation			
BASIC INTRB 1.3.1	Use appropriate documentation and their sources for the course.	3	*Optional content: training documentation, library, CBT library, web, learning management server*
BASIC INTRB 1.3.2	Integrate appropriate information into course studies.	4	Training documentation *Optional content: supplementary information, library*

TOPIC INTRB 2 - INTRODUCTION TO THE ATC TRAINING COURSE

Subtopic INTRB 2.1 - Course content and organisation			
BASIC INTRB 2.1.1	State the different training methods applied in the course.	1	Theoretical training, practical training, self-study, types of training events
BASIC INTRB 2.1.2	State the subjects of the course and their purpose.	1	
BASIC INTRB 2.1.3	Describe the organisation of theoretical training.	2	*Optional content: course programme*
BASIC INTRB 2.1.4	Describe the organisation of practical training.	2	*Optional content: PTP, simulation, briefing, debriefing, course programme*

Subtopic INTRB 2.2 - Training ethos			
BASIC INTRB 2.2.1	Recognise the feedback mechanisms available.	1	*Optional content: instructor discussions, training progress, assessment, examinations, results, briefing, debriefing*
BASIC INTRB 2.2.2	Describe the positive effect of working and learning together with course participants.	2	Team work in theoretical and practical training
Subtopic INTRB 2.3 - Assessment process			
BASIC INTRB 2.3.1	Describe the assessment process.	2	

TOPIC INTRB 3 - INTRODUCTION TO THE ATCO's FUTURE

Subtopic INTRB 3.1 - Job prospects			
BASIC INTRB 3.1.1	Recognise an ATCO's working environment.	1	Area control unit, approach control unit, aerodrome control unit
BASIC INTRB 3.1.2	Recognise career developments.	1	*Optional content: OJT instructor, supervisor, operational managerial posts, non-operational posts*

SUBJECT 2: AVIATION LAW

The subject objective is:

Learners shall apply the regulations governing rules of the air, airspace and flight planning and explain their development or where applicable incorporation into national legislation.

TOPIC LAWB 1 - INTRODUCTION TO AVIATION LAW

Subtopic LAWB 1.1 - Relevance of aviation law			
BASIC LAWB 1.1.1	State the necessity for air law, the sources and development of aviation law.	1	Relevant EU legislation, ICAO Convention ICAO Convention *Optional content: ICAO Annex 2, national aviation law*
BASIC LAWB 1.1.2	Name the key national and international aviation organisations.	1	*Optional content: ICAO, ECAC, EASA, EUROCONTROL, national authority*
BASIC LAWB 1.1.3	Describe the impact these organisations have on ATC and their interaction with each other.	2	

TOPIC LAWB 2 - INTERNATIONAL ORGANISATIONS

Subtopic LAWB 2.1 - ICAO			
BASIC LAWB 2.1.1	Explain the purpose and function of ICAO.	2	
BASIC LAWB 2.1.2	Describe the methods by which ICAO notifies and implements legislation.	2	SARPs, PANS, ICAO Annexes, ICAO documents *Optional content: regional offices*
Subtopic LAWB 2.2 - European and other agencies			
BASIC LAWB 2.2.1	Explain the purpose and functions of EUROCONTROL.	2	Network manager function
BASIC LAWB 2.2.2	Explain the purpose and functions of EASA.	2	
BASIC LAWB 2.2.3	State the purpose and function of other international agencies and their relevance to air traffic operations.	1	*Optional content: ECAC, EU, ITU, CANSO*

Subtopic LAWB 2.3 - Aviation associations			
BASIC LAWB 2.3.1	State the purpose of controller, pilot, airline and airspace user associations and their interaction with ATC.	1	*Optional content: IFATCA, IFALPA, IATA, AEA, IAOPA, IACA, military services, ETF, ATCEUC*

TOPIC LAWB 3 - NATIONAL ORGANISATIONS

Subtopic LAWB 3.1 - Purpose and function			
BASIC LAWB 3.1.1	Describe the purpose and function of appropriate national agencies and their relevance to air traffic operations.	2	*Optional content: civil aviation administration agencies, government agencies*
Subtopic LAWB 3.2 - National legislative procedures			
BASIC LAWB 3.2.1	Describe the means by which legislation is implemented, notified and updated.	2	ICAO Annex 15 *Optional content: AIS, AIPs, AIRAC, SUPs, AICs, NOTAMs, integrated aeronautical information package, national legislation, letters of agreement, operations manual*
BASIC LAWB 3.2.2	Recognise the information contained in the different parts of the AIP.	1	
Subtopic LAWB 3.3 - Competent authority			
BASIC LAWB 3.3.1	Name the competent authority responsible for licensing and enforcing legislation and operational procedures.	1	
BASIC LAWB 3.3.2	Describe how the competent authority carries out its safety regulation responsibilities.	2	
Subtopic LAWB 3.4 - National aviation associations			
BASIC LAWB 3.4.1	State the purpose of national controller, pilot, airline and airspace user associations.	1	

TOPIC LAWB 4 - ATS SAFETY MANAGEMENT

Subtopic LAWB 4.1 - Safety regulation

BASIC LAWB 4.1.1	Describe the need for safety regulation.	2	Regulation (EC) 216/2008 ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: Commission Implementing Regulation (EU) No 1034/2011, national regulation*
BASIC LAWB 4.1.2	Describe the general principles of the safety organisation.	2	Safety regulation Safety regulation *Optional content: Regulation (EU) No 1035/2011, national regulation*
BASIC LAWB 4.1.3	Explain the impact of safety regulation on the controller.	2	*Optional content: Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on ATCO LIcensing*

Subtopic LAWB 4.2 - Safety management system

BASIC LAWB 4.2.1	Explain the regulatory requirements of safety management systems in ATM.	2	Regulation (EU) No 1035/2011 ICAO Doc 4444
BASIC LAWB 4.2.2	Explain the principles of the safety management systems.	2	Regulation (EU) No 1035/2011 ICAO Doc 4444
BASIC LAWB 4.2.3	Describe the safety assessment methodology.	2	Regulation (EU) No 1035/2011, Regulation (EU) No 1034/2011 ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: EATMP Air navigation system safety assessment methodology, national regulations*

TOPIC LAWB 5 - RULES AND REGULATIONS

Subtopic LAWB 5.1 - Units of measurement

BASIC LAWB 5.1.1	Describe the units of measurement used in aviation.	2	COUNCIL DIRECTIVE of 20 December 1979 on units of measurement ICAO Annex 5

Subtopic LAWB 5.2 - ATCO licensing/certification			
BASIC LAWB 5.2.1	Explain the ATCO licensing/certification process.	2	Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on ATCO Licensing, Approved training courses, ATCO licence, ratings and endorsements ICAO Annex 1 *Optional content: national processes*
BASIC LAWB 5.2.2	Explain the privileges and limitations of controller licences.	2	Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on ATCO Licensing ICAO Annex 1
Subtopic LAWB 5.3 - Overview of ANS and ATS			
BASIC LAWB 5.3.1	Differentiate between the Air Navigation Services.	2	Regulation (EC) No 216/2008, Regulation (EC) No 549/2004 ICAO Doc 9161
BASIC LAWB 5.3.2	Explain the considerations which determine the need for the ATS.	2	ICAO Annex 11
BASIC LAWB 5.3.3	Differentiate between the ATS.	2	ATCS, ADVS, FIS, ALRS
BASIC LAWB 5.3.4	Explain the objectives of ATS.	2	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012 ICAO Annex 11
Subtopic LAWB 5.4 - Rules of the air			
BASIC LAWB 5.4.1	Explain the Rules of the Air.	2	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012 ICAO Annex 2
BASIC LAWB 5.4.2	State any notified differences with ICAO.	1	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012 ICAO Doc 7030 *Optional content: Supplements to ICAO Annex 2 and ICAO Annex 11*
BASIC LAWB 5.4.3	Appreciate the influence of relevant flight rules on ATC.	3	General flight rules, instrument flight rules, visual flight rules
BASIC LAWB 5.4.4	Appreciate the differences between flying in accordance with VFR and IFR, in VMC and IMC.	3	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012 ICAO Annex 2
Subtopic LAWB 5.5 - Airspace and ATS routes			
BASIC LAWB 5.5.1	Explain airspace classification.	2	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012 ICAO Classes A-G, ICAO Annex 11
BASIC LAWB 5.5.2	Differentiate between the different types of airspace.	2	*Optional content: control zones, control areas, airways, upper and lower airspace, restricted areas, prohibited and danger areas, FIR, aerodrome traffic zone, etc.*

Subtopic LAWB 5.5 - Airspace and ATS routes			
BASIC LAWB 5.5.3	Differentiate between the different types of ATS routes.	2	Airway, arrival route, departure route, advisory route, controlled route, uncontrolled route, etc.
BASIC LAWB 5.5.4	Decode information from aeronautical charts.	3	*Optional content: control zones, control areas, ATS routes, upper and lower airspace, restricted areas, prohibited and danger areas, FIR, aerodrome traffic zone, etc.*
Subtopic LAWB 5.6 - Flight plan			
BASIC LAWB 5.6.1	Explain the functions of a flight plan.	2	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Doc 4444 ICAO Annex 2, ICAO Doc 4444
BASIC LAWB 5.6.2	Explain the different types of flight plans and associated update messages.	2	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Doc 4444 ICAO Doc 4444
BASIC LAWB 5.6.3	Explain the pilot's responsibilities in relation to adherence to flight plan.	2	Inadvertent changes, intended changes, position reporting
BASIC LAWB 5.6.4	Describe flight plan processing.	2	*Optional content: AFTN, IFPS*
Subtopic LAWB 5.7 - Aerodromes			
BASIC LAWB 5.7.1	Describe the general design and layout of an aerodrome.	2	Runway(s), taxiways, apron, movement area, manoeuvring area, designated positions on an aerodrome
BASIC LAWB 5.7.2	Explain the numbering system and orientation of runways.	2	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14
BASIC LAWB 5.7.3	Differentiate between different types of aerodromes.	2	Controlled, uncontrolled *Optional content: military, international, regional*
BASIC LAWB 5.7.4	Describe designated positions in the traffic circuit.	2	
BASIC LAWB 5.7.5	List the factors affecting the selection of runway in use.	1	

Subtopic LAWB 5.8 - Holding procedures for IFR flights			
BASIC LAWB 5.8.1	Describe the purpose of holding.	2	Traffic management, weather, pilot request, ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 8168
BASIC LAWB 5.8.2	Describe types of holding patterns.	2	Published, non-published
BASIC LAWB 5.8.3	Describe an ICAO holding pattern.	2	ICAO Doc 8168 - Parts of an IFR holding pattern, entry/exit procedures, dimensions of patterns, protected airspace, holding areas, alignment, rates of turns, holding times, expect further clearance, Expected Approach Times (EATs)
BASIC LAWB 5.8.4	Describe the factors affecting holding pattern.	2	Effect of speed, effect of level used, effect of navigation aid in use, turbulence
Subtopic LAWB 5.9 - Holding procedures for VFR flights			
BASIC LAWB 5.9.1	Describe VFR holding.	2	

SUBJECT 3: AIR TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall describe the basic principles of air traffic management and apply basic operational procedures.

TOPIC ATMB 1 - AIR TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT

Subtopic ATMB 1.1 - Application of units of measurement			
BASIC ATMB 1.1.1	Apply the units of measurement appropriate to ATM.	3	
Subtopic ATMB 1.2 - Air traffic control (ATC) service			
BASIC ATMB 1.2.1	Define ATC service.	1	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012 ICAO Annex 11
BASIC ATMB 1.2.2	Explain the division of the ATC service.	2	Regulation (EC) No 549/2004, ICAO Annex 11 ICAO Annex 11
BASIC ATMB 1.2.3	Explain the responsibility for the provision of the ATC service.	2	ICAO Annex 11
BASIC ATMB 1.2.4	Differentiate between the different methods of providing ATC services.	2	Aerodrome, surveillance, procedural
Subtopic ATMB 1.3 - Flight information service (FIS)			
BASIC ATMB 1.3.1	Define FIS.	1	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012 ICAO Annex 11
BASIC ATMB 1.3.2	Describe the scope of the FIS.	2	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012 ICAO Annex 11
BASIC ATMB 1.3.3	Explain the responsibility for the provision of the FIS.	2	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Doc 4444 ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Annex 11
BASIC ATMB 1.3.4	State the methods of transmitting information.	1	*Optional content: RTF, data link, ATIS, VOLMET, etc.*
BASIC ATMB 1.3.5	List the content of ATIS and VOLMET.	1	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 3 ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Annex 3 *Optional content: meteorological data obtained by data link*

Subtopic ATMB 1.3 - Flight information service (FIS)			
BASIC ATMB 1.3.6	Issue information to aircraft.	3	*Optional content: SIGMET, serviceability of navaids, weather, flight safety information, essential traffic, essential local traffic, information related to aerodrome conditions, etc.*
Subtopic ATMB 1.4 - Alerting service			
BASIC ATMB 1.4.1	Define ALRS.	1	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012 ICAO Annex 11
BASIC ATMB 1.4.2	Describe the scope of the ALRS.	2	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 11 ICAO Annex 11
BASIC ATMB 1.4.3	Explain the responsibility for the provision of the ALRS.	2	ICAO Doc 4444
BASIC ATMB 1.4.4	Differentiate between the phases of emergency.	2	Uncertainty, alert, distress
BASIC ATMB 1.4.5	Describe the organisation of an ALRS.	2	Responsibilities, local organisation
BASIC ATMB 1.4.6	Describe the cooperation between units providing the alerting services and the SAR units.	2	
BASIC ATMB 1.4.7	Differentiate between distress and urgency signals.	2	Mayday, Pan Pan, Pan Pan Medical *Optional content: visual signals, etc.*
Subtopic ATMB 1.5 - Air traffic advisory service			
BASIC ATMB 1.5.1	Define Air Traffic Advisory Service.	1	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012 ICAO Annex 11
BASIC ATMB 1.5.2	Describe the scope of the Air Traffic Advisory Service.	2	ICAO Doc 4444
BASIC ATMB 1.5.3	Explain the responsibility for the provision of the Air Traffic Advisory Service.	2	ICAO Doc 4444
BASIC ATMB 1.5.4	State to which flights Air Traffic Advisory Service shall be provided.	1	ICAO Doc 4444
Subtopic ATMB 1.6 - ATS system capacity and air traffic flow management			
BASIC ATMB 1.6.1	Define ATFM.	1	Regulation (EC) No 549/2004 ICAO Annex 11

Subtopic ATMB 1.6 - ATS system capacity and air traffic flow management			
BASIC ATMB 1.6.2	State the scope of capacity management.	1	Regulation (EU) No 255/2010, ICAO Doc 4444 ICAO Annex11, ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030
BASIC ATMB 1.6.3	Describe the scope of ATFCM.	2	Regulation (EU) No 255/2010, ICAO Doc 4444, EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual ICAO Annex11, ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030, EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual
BASIC ATMB 1.6.4	Explain the responsibility for the provision of ATFCM.	2	Regulation (EU) No 255/2010, ICAO Doc 4444, EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual ICAO Annex11, ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030, EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual
BASIC ATMB 1.6.5	Explain the methods of providing ATFCM.	2	Regulation (EU) No 255/2010, ICAO Doc 4444, EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual ICAO Doc 4444, EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual
Subtopic ATMB 1.7 - Airspace management (ASM)			
BASIC ATMB 1.7.1	Define ASM.	1	Regulation (EC) No 549/2004 EUROCONTROL ASM HBK- Airspace Management Handbook for the application of FUA *Optional content: Commission Regulation (EC) No 2150/2005,*
BASIC ATMB 1.7.2	Describe the scope of ASM.	2	Regulation (EC) No 2150/2005 EUROCONTROL ASM HBK- Airspace Management Handbook for the application of FUA *Optional content: FABs, EUROCONTROL Specification for the application of the FUA*
BASIC ATMB 1.7.3	Explain the responsibility for the provision of ASM.	2	Regulation (EC) No 2150/2005 EUROCONTROL ASM HBK- Airspace Management Handbook for the application of FUA *Optional content: EUROCONTROL Specification for the application of the FUA*
BASIC ATMB 1.7.4	Explain the methods of managing airspace.	2	Regulation (EC) No 2150/2005 EUROCONTROL ASM HBK- Airspace Management Handbook for the application of FUA *Optional content: Flexible use of airspace, airspace design, CDRs, TSAs*

TOPIC ATMB 2 - ALTIMETRY AND LEVEL ALLOCATION

Subtopic ATMB 2.1 - Altimetry			
BASIC ATMB 2.1.1	Appreciate the relationship between height, altitude and flight level.	3	QFE, QNH, standard pressure
Subtopic ATMB 2.2 - Transition level			
BASIC ATMB 2.2.1	Appreciate the relationship between transition level, transition altitude and transition layer.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 8168
BASIC ATMB 2.2.2	Calculate appropriate levels.	3	*Optional content: transition level , transition layer, height, lowest useable flight level, vertical distance to airspace boundaries*
Subtopic ATMB 2.3 - Level allocation			
BASIC ATMB 2.3.1	Describe the cruising level allocation system.	2	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, table of cruising levels ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Annex 2 - tables of cruising levels
BASIC ATMB 2.3.2	Choose appropriate levels.	3	Flight levels, altitudes, heights

TOPIC ATMB 3 - RADIOTELEPHONY (RTF)

Subtopic ATMB 3.1 - RTF general operating procedures			
BASIC ATMB 3.1.1	Explain the need for approved phraseology.	2	
BASIC ATMB 3.1.2	Use approved phraseology.	3	Parts of the following documents relevant to the Basic course: ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 9432 RTF manual - standard words and phrases, ICAO Annex 10 Vol. 2
BASIC ATMB 3.1.3	Perform communication effectively.	3	Communication techniques, readback/verification of readback

TOPIC ATMB 4 - ATC CLEARANCES AND ATC INSTRUCTIONS

Subtopic ATMB 4.1 - Type and content of ATC clearances			
BASIC ATMB 4.1.1	Define ATC clearance.	1	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012 ICAO Annex 2
BASIC ATMB 4.1.2	Describe the contents of an ATC clearance.	2	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Doc 4444 ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Annex 11
BASIC ATMB 4.1.3	Issue appropriate ATC clearances.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*
Subtopic ATMB 4.2 - ATC instructions			
BASIC ATMB 4.2.1	Define ATC Instructions.	1	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012 ICAO Doc 4444
BASIC ATMB 4.2.2	Describe the contents of an ATC instruction.	2	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Annex 11
BASIC ATMB 4.2.3	Issue appropriate ATC instructions.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*

TOPIC ATMB 5 - COORDINATION

Subtopic ATMB 5.1 - Principles, types and content of coordination			
BASIC ATMB 5.1.1	Explain the principles, types and content of coordination.	2	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Annex 11 *Optional content: notification, negotiation, agreement, transfer of flight data and local agreements, etc.*
Subtopic ATMB 5.2 - Necessity for coordination			
BASIC ATMB 5.2.1	Appreciate the need for coordination.	3	*Optional content: ICAO Doc 4444, local procedures, letters of agreements*
BASIC ATMB 5.2.2	Differentiate between transfer of control and transfer of communication procedures.	2	

Subtopic ATMB 5.3 - Means of coordination			
BASIC ATMB 5.3.1	Describe the means of coordination	2	*Optional content: data link, telephone, intercom, voice, etc.*
BASIC ATMB 5.3.2	Use the available means for coordination.	3	

TOPIC ATMB 6 - DATA DISPLAY

Subtopic ATMB 6.1 - Data extraction			
BASIC ATMB 6.1.1	Encode and decode an appropriate selection of standard ICAO abbreviations.	3	*Optional content: ICAO Doc 8585, ICAO Doc 8643, ICAO Doc 7910*
BASIC ATMB 6.1.2	Extract pertinent data from relevant sources to produce a flight progress display.	3	Pilot reports, coordination, data exchange *Optional content: flight plan*
BASIC ATMB 6.1.3	Encode and decode flight plans (including supplementary information).	3	ICAO format, AFTN format
Subtopic ATMB 6.2 - Data management			
BASIC ATMB 6.2.1	Update the situation display to accurately reflect the traffic situation.	3	*Optional content: strip marking symbols, strip movement procedures, electronic data, label*

TOPIC ATMB 7 - SEPARATIONS

Subtopic ATMB 7.1 - Vertical separation and procedures			
BASIC ATMB 7.1.1	State the vertical separation standards.	1	ICAO Doc 4444
BASIC ATMB 7.1.2	Explain the vertical separation procedures.	2	ICAO Doc 4444
Subtopic ATMB 7.2 - Horizontal separation and procedures			
BASIC ATMB 7.2.1	State the longitudinal separation standards and procedures based on time and distance.	1	ICAO Doc 4444
BASIC ATMB 7.2.2	State the lateral separation standards and procedures.	1	ICAO Doc 4444

Subtopic ATMB 7.3 - Visual separation			
BASIC ATMB 7.3.1	State the occasions when clearance to fly maintaining own separation while in VMC can be used.	1	
Subtopic ATMB 7.4 - Aerodrome separation and procedures			
BASIC ATMB 7.4.1	State the aerodrome separation standards.	1	Separation on the manoeuvring area, in the traffic circuit, for departing and arriving aircraft
BASIC ATMB 7.4.2	Explain the aerodrome separation procedures.	2	ICAO Doc 4444
BASIC ATMB 7.4.3	Define essential local traffic.	1	ICAO Doc 4444
Subtopic ATMB 7.5 - Separation based on ATS surveillance systems			
BASIC ATMB 7.5.1	Explain the use of ATS surveillance systems in ATS.	2	Separation, identification, monitoring, vectoring, expedition and assistance to traffic *Optional content: ICAO Doc 4444*
BASIC ATMB 7.5.2	Explain the ATS surveillance systems separation standards and procedures.	2	ICAO Doc 4444
Subtopic ATMB 7.6 - Wake turbulence separation			
BASIC ATMB 7.6.1	Explain the wake turbulence separations.	2	ICAO Doc 4444

TOPIC ATMB 8 - AIRBORNE COLLISION AVOIDANCE SYSTEMS AND GROUND-BASED SAFETY NETS

Subtopic ATMB 8.1 - Airborne collision avoidance systems			
BASIC ATMB 8.1.1	State the European requirement for carriage of airborne collision avoidance system.	1	Regulation (EU) No 1332/2011 ICAO Doc 8168
BASIC ATMB 8.1.2	Explain the main characteristics of airborne warning systems and their relevance to ATC operations.	2	ACAS, TAWS *Optional content: TCAS, EGPWS, Wind shear alerts*
BASIC ATMB 8.1.3	Explain the function of ACAS Traffic Alerts and Resolution Advisories.	2	Regulation (EU) No 1332/2011, ICAO Doc 8168 ICAO Doc 8168
BASIC ATMB 8.1.4	List the actions of the pilot in case of TA and RA.	1	Regulation (EU) No 1332/2011, ICAO Doc 8168 ICAO Doc 8168

Subtopic ATMB 8.1 - Airborne collision avoidance systems			
BASIC ATMB 8.1.5	List the ACAS limitations.	1	ICAO Doc 9863
Subtopic ATMB 8.2 - Ground-based safety nets			
BASIC ATMB 8.2.1	Explain the main characteristics of ground-based safety nets and their relevance to ATC operations.	2	*Optional content: STCA, MSAW, APW, APM*

TOPIC ATMB 9 - BASIC PRACTICAL SKILLS

Subtopic ATMB 9.1 - Traffic management process			
BASIC ATMB 9.1.1	Consider human information processing in the provision of ATC.	2	Situational awareness, conflict detection, planning, decision making, prioritisation, execution
BASIC ATMB 9.1.2	Consider the need for verification that actions are carried out.	2	Monitoring
Subtopic ATMB 9.2 - Basic practical skills applicable to all ratings			
BASIC ATMB 9.2.1	Verify that settings of the working position are appropriate.	3	
BASIC ATMB 9.2.2	Operate the available working position equipment.	3	
BASIC ATMB 9.2.3	Maintain situational awareness by monitoring traffic.	3	Information gathering, scanning, planning
BASIC ATMB 9.2.4	Appreciate priority of actions.	3	
BASIC ATMB 9.2.5	Execute selected plan.	3	
BASIC ATMB 9.2.6	Apply the prescribed procedures for the area of responsibility.	3	*Optional content: LOPs, transfer of control and communication, level allocation, inbound and outbound procedures*
BASIC ATMB 9.2.7	Appreciate relative velocity between aircraft.	3	
BASIC ATMB 9.2.8	Identify separation problems.	3	

Subtopic ATMB 9.2 - Basic practical skills applicable to all ratings			
BASIC ATMB 9.2.9	Choose appropriate separation methods.	3	
BASIC ATMB 9.2.10	Apply separation.	3	*Optional content: vertical, longitudinal, lateral, aerodrome, based on ATS surveillance systems, distances from airspace boundaries*
Subtopic ATMB 9.3 - Basic practical skills applicable to aerodrome			
BASIC ATMB 9.3.1	Perform the basic functions of aerodrome control.	3	
BASIC ATMB 9.3.2	Perform the control of aerodrome traffic.	3	Single runway operations including VFR and IFR traffic
Subtopic ATMB 9.4 - Basic practical skills applicable to surveillance			
BASIC ATMB 9.4.1	Explain the methods and procedures of establishing identification.	2	ICAO Doc 4444
BASIC ATMB 9.4.2	Apply the procedures of establishing identification.	3	Any of the ATS surveillance systems identification methods
BASIC ATMB 9.4.3	Estimate heading for a new track and the distance to the next way point.	3	
BASIC ATMB 9.4.4	Apply vectoring techniques.	3	
BASIC ATMB 9.4.5	Conduct level changes.	3	*Optional content: cruising level allocation, requested level change, climb/descent to exit level, descent to an altitude or a height*

SUBJECT 4: METEOROLOGY

The subject objective is:

Learners shall describe how meteorology affects ATS operations and aircraft performance and apply meteorological information in the basic operational procedures of ATS.

TOPIC METB 1 - INTRODUCTION TO METEOROLOGY

Subtopic METB 1.1 - Application of units of measurement			
BASIC METB 1.1.1	Apply the units of measurement appropriate to meteorology.	3	
Subtopic METB 1.2 - Aviation and meteorology			
BASIC METB 1.2.1	Explain the relevance of meteorology in aviation.	2	
BASIC METB 1.2.2	Explain the requirements for the provision of meteorological information available to operators, flight crew members, and to air traffic services.	2	ICAO Annex 3, ICAO Annex 11
BASIC METB 1.2.3	State the meteorological hazards to aviation.	1	Turbulence, thunderstorms, icing, micro bursts, squall, macro burst, wind shear
Subtopic METB 1.3 - Organisation of meteorological service			
BASIC METB 1.3.1	Name the basic duties, organisation and working methods of meteorological offices.	1	*Optional content: WAFS, WAFC, MWO, VAAC, TCAC, SADIS*
BASIC METB 1.3.2	State the International and National standards for coordination between ATS and MET services.	1	

TOPIC METB 2 - ATMOSPHERE

Subtopic METB 2.1 - Composition and structure			
BASIC METB 2.1.1	State the composition and structure of the atmosphere.	1	Gases, layers
BASIC METB 2.1.2	Describe the basic characteristics of the atmospheric parameters measured.	2	Temperature, pressure, wind, humidity, density
BASIC METB 2.1.3	List the tools used for the collection of meteorological data.	1	*Optional content: barometer, thermometer, ceilometer, anemometer, weather balloons, transmissometer, radar, satellites, etc.*
Subtopic METB 2.2 - Standard atmosphere			
BASIC METB 2.2.1	Describe the elements of the ISA.	2	Temperature, pressure, density
BASIC METB 2.2.2	State the reasons why the ISA has been defined.	1	
Subtopic METB 2.3 - Heat and temperature			
BASIC METB 2.3.1	Define the processes by which heat is transferred and how the atmosphere is heated.	1	Radiation, convection, advection, conduction, water cycle
BASIC METB 2.3.2	Describe how temperature varies.	2	Adiabatic processes, lapse rates, stability, instability
BASIC METB 2.3.3	State the influencing factors on surface temperature.	1	
Subtopic METB 2.4 - Water in the atmosphere			
BASIC METB 2.4.1	Differentiate between the different processes related to atmospheric moisture.	2	Condensation, evaporation, sublimation, saturation
BASIC METB 2.4.2	Characterise relative humidity, dew point and latent heat.	2	

Subtopic METB 2.5 - Air pressure			
BASIC METB 2.5.1	Describe the relationship between pressure, temperature, density and height.	2	
BASIC METB 2.5.2	Explain the relationship between pressure settings.	2	QFE, QNH, standard pressure
BASIC METB 2.5.3	Explain the effect of air pressure and temperature on altimeter readings and the true altitude of aircraft.	2	
BASIC METB 2.5.4	State how atmospheric pressure is measured.	1	

TOPIC METB 3 - ATMOSPHERIC CIRCULATION

Subtopic METB 3.1 - General air circulation			
BASIC METB 3.1.1	State the major atmospheric circulation features on the Earth.	1	*Optional content: Hadley cells, high and low belts, polar fronts, westerly winds, upper level jet streams*
Subtopic METB 3.2 - Air masses and frontal systems			
BASIC METB 3.2.1	Describe the origin and movement of typical air masses and their general effect on European weather.	2	Polar, arctic, tropical, equatorial (maritime and continental)
BASIC METB 3.2.2	Describe the main isobaric features.	2	Cyclones, anticyclones, ridge, trough
BASIC METB 3.2.3	Describe the difference between various fronts and the associated weather.	2	Warm front, cold front, occluded front
Subtopic METB 3.3 - Mesoscale systems			
BASIC METB 3.3.1	Describe the main phenomena caused by mesoscale systems.	2	Mountain waves, Föhn, slope and valley winds, thunderstorm, squall line *Optional content: land/sea breezes, tornadoes, land spouts, waterspouts*
BASIC METB 3.3.2	Explain the relevance of mesoscale systems to aviation.	2	

Subtopic METB 3.4 - Wind			
BASIC METB 3.4.1	Explain the significance of wind phenomena and types.	2	*Optional content: veering, backing, gusting, jet streams, land/sea breezes, Föhn, surface, upper*
BASIC METB 3.4.2	State how wind is measured.	1	
BASIC METB 3.4.3	Explain effect of forces which influence wind.	2	

TOPIC METB 4 - METEOROLOGICAL PHENOMENA

Subtopic METB 4.1 - Clouds			
BASIC METB 4.1.1	Explain the different conditions for the formation of clouds.	2	
BASIC METB 4.1.2	Recognise different cloud types.	1	
BASIC METB 4.1.3	State the cloud types main characteristics.	1	
BASIC METB 4.1.4	State how the cloud base and the amount of cloud are measured and/or observed.	1	
BASIC METB 4.1.5	Define cloud base and ceiling.	1	
BASIC METB 4.1.6	Differentiate between cloud base and ceiling.	2	
Subtopic METB 4.2 - Types of precipitation			
BASIC METB 4.2.1	Explain the significance of precipitation in aviation.	2	
BASIC METB 4.2.2	Describe types of precipitation and their corresponding cloud families.	2	*Optional content: rain, snow, snow grains, hail, ice pellets, ice crystals, drizzle*

Subtopic METB 4.3 - Visibility			
BASIC METB 4.3.1	Explain the causes of atmospheric obscurity.	2	
BASIC METB 4.3.2	Differentiate between different types of visibility.	2	Horizontal visibility, slant visibility, prevailing visibility, RVR
BASIC METB 4.3.3	State how visibility is measured.	1	
BASIC METB 4.3.4	Explain the significance of visibility in aviation.	2	
Subtopic METB 4.4 - Meteorological hazards			
BASIC METB 4.4.1	Explain the meteorological hazards to aviation.	2	Turbulence, icing, micro bursts, macro burst, wind shear *Optional content: thunderstorms, squall*
BASIC METB 4.4.2	Describe the effect of meteorological hazards on aviation.	2	

TOPIC METB 5 - METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION FOR AVIATION

Subtopic METB 5.1 - Messages and reports			
BASIC METB 5.1.1	Decode the content of weather reports and forecasts.	3	METAR, SPECI, TAF, SIGMET *Optional content: local reports*

SUBJECT 5: NAVIGATION

The subject objective is:

Learners shall explain the basic principles of navigation and use this knowledge in ATS operations.

TOPIC NAVB 1 - INTRODUCTION TO NAVIGATION

Subtopic NAVB 1.1 - Application of units of measurement			
BASIC NAVB 1.1.1	Apply the units of measurement appropriate to navigation.	3	
Subtopic NAVB 1.2 - Purpose and use of navigation			
BASIC NAVB 1.2.1	Explain the need for navigation in aviation.	2	
BASIC NAVB 1.2.2	Characterise navigation methods.	2	*Optional content: historical overview, celestial, on-board, radio, satellites*

TOPIC NAVB 2 - THE EARTH

Subtopic NAVB 2.1 - Place and movement of the Earth			
BASIC NAVB 2.1.1	Explain the Earth's properties and their effects.	2	*Optional content: form, size, rotation, revolution in space, seasons, day, night, twilight, units of time, time zones, UTC*
Subtopic NAVB 2.2 - System of coordinates, direction and distance			
BASIC NAVB 2.2.1	Characterise the general principles of a grid system.	2	*Optional content: degrees, minutes, seconds, WGS-84, latitude/longitude*
BASIC NAVB 2.2.2	Explain direction and distance on a globe.	2	*Optional content: great circle, small circle, rhumb line, cardinal points, inter-cardinal points*
BASIC NAVB 2.2.3	Estimate position on the Earth's surface.	3	*Optional content: latitude/longitude*
BASIC NAVB 2.2.4	Estimate distance and direction between two points.	3	

Subtopic NAVB 2.3 - Magnetism			
BASIC NAVB 2.3.1	Explain the general principles of the Earth's magnetism.	2	True north, magnetic north, variation, deviation, inclination
BASIC NAVB 2.3.2	Calculate conversions between the three north designations.	3	True north, magnetic north, compass north

TOPIC NAVB 3 - MAPS AND AERONAUTICAL CHARTS

Subtopic NAVB 3.1 - Map making and projections			
BASIC NAVB 3.1.1	State how the Earth is projected to create a map.	1	Types of projection
BASIC NAVB 3.1.2	Describe the properties of a map.	2	Projection, scale
BASIC NAVB 3.1.3	Describe the properties of an ideal map.	2	*Optional content: conformality, constant scale, true azimuth, rhumb lines and great circles*
BASIC NAVB 3.1.4	State the properties and use of different projections.	1	*Optional content: Lambert, Mercator, stereographic*
Subtopic NAVB 3.2 - Maps and charts used in aviation			
BASIC NAVB 3.2.1	Differentiate between the various maps and charts.	2	
BASIC NAVB 3.2.2	State the specific use of various maps and charts.	1	
BASIC NAVB 3.2.3	Decode symbols and information displayed on maps and charts.	3	*Optional content: topographical features, NAV aids, fixes etc.*

TOPIC NAVB 4 - NAVIGATIONAL BASICS

Subtopic NAVB 4.1 - Influence of wind			
BASIC NAVB 4.1.1	Appreciate the influence of wind on the flight path.	3	Heading, track, drift, wind vector

Subtopic NAVB 4.2 - Speed			
BASIC NAVB 4.2.1	Explain the relationship between various speeds used in aviation.	2	True air speed, ground speed, indicated air speed (including Mach number)
BASIC NAVB 4.2.2	Appreciate the use of various speeds in ATC.	3	
Subtopic NAVB 4.3 - Visual navigation			
BASIC NAVB 4.3.1	Differentiate between the methods of visual navigation.	2	Map reading, visual reference *Optional content: dead-reckoning*
Subtopic NAVB 4.4 - Navigational aspects of flight planning			
BASIC NAVB 4.4.1	Describe the navigational aspects affecting flight planning.	2	*Optional content: fuel/time calculations, min altitudes, alternative routes*

TOPIC NAVB 5 - INSTRUMENT NAVIGATION

Subtopic NAVB 5.1 - Ground-based systems			
BASIC NAVB 5.1.1	Explain the basic working principles of ground-based systems.	2	VDF, NDB, VOR, DME, ILS *Optional content: TACAN, MLS*
BASIC NAVB 5.1.2	State the use of ground-based systems.	1	VDF, NDB, VOR, DME, ILS *Optional content: TACAN, MLS*
BASIC NAVB 5.1.3	Characterise the main radio navigation techniques based on ground-based systems.	2	*Optional content: homing, inbound/outbound tracking, instrument approach procedures, holding, drift assessment*
BASIC NAVB 5.1.4	Explain the effects of precision and limitations of ground-based systems on the flight.	2	VDF, NDB, VOR, DME, ILS *Optional content: TACAN, MLS*
Subtopic NAVB 5.2 - Inertial navigation systems			
BASIC NAVB 5.2.1	Explain the basic working principles, precision and limitations of on-boards systems.	2	*Optional content: INS/IRS*
BASIC NAVB 5.2.2	State the use of on-board systems.	1	

Subtopic NAVB 5.3 - Satellite-based systems			
BASIC NAVB 5.3.1	Explain the basic working principles of positioning systems.	2	*Optional content: GPS, GLONASS, Galileo*
BASIC NAVB 5.3.2	State the basic principles of GNSS concept.	1	Basic, ABAS, SBAS, GBAS
BASIC NAVB 5.3.3	Explain the effects of precision and limitations of satellite-based systems.	2	*Optional content: RAIM, GPS Notams*
Subtopic NAVB 5.4 - Instrument approach procedures			
BASIC NAVB 5.4.1	Recognise various types of instrument approach using aeronautical charts.	1	
BASIC NAVB 5.4.2	Differentiate between precision approach and non-precision approach procedures.	2	
BASIC NAVB 5.4.3	Recognise the different minima used during an instrument approach.	1	
BASIC NAVB 5.4.4	Define the terms obstacle clearance altitude/height and minimum descent altitude/height.	1	
BASIC NAVB 5.4.5	List the instrumental approach fixes.	1	IAF, IF, FAF, FAP, MAPt

TOPIC NAVB 6 - PERFORMANCE BASED NAVIGATION

Subtopic NAVB 6.1 - Principles and benefits of area navigation			
BASIC NAVB 6.1.1	Explain the basic principles of area navigation.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Doc 9613*
BASIC NAVB 6.1.2	State the benefits of area navigation.	1	*Optional content: ICAO Doc 9613*

Subtopic NAVB 6.1 - Principles and benefits of area navigation			
BASIC NAVB 6.1.3	State the effects of navigational performance accuracy of RNAV systems on the flight.	1	TSE, PDE, NSE, FTE *Optional content: ICAO Doc 9613*
BASIC NAVB 6.1.4	Characterise the main aircraft and avionics functionalities used in area navigation.	2	*Optional content: waypoints transitions (FRT) and path terminators (including RF), fly over and fly by a waypoint, parallel offset*
BASIC NAVB 6.1.5	Characterise the navigational functions of FMS.	2	*Optional content: VNAV, LNAV*
Subtopic NAVB 6.2 - Introduction to PBN			
BASIC NAVB 6.2.1	State the general concept of PBN.	1	*Optional content: ICAO Doc 9613*
BASIC NAVB 6.2.2	Differentiate between RNAV and RNP.	2	On board performance monitoring and alerting
BASIC NAVB 6.2.3	State the navigation infrastructure that may be used in PBN.	1	VOR, DME, GNSS *Optional content: functionality IRS/INS*
BASIC NAVB 6.2.4	State the benefits of PBN concept.	1	*Optional content: global interoperability, limited number of navigation specifications*
Subtopic NAVB 6.3 - PBN applications			
BASIC NAVB 6.3.1	List the navigation applications in use in Europe.	1	En-route, terminal/approach *Optional content: RNAV-5 (B-RNAV), RNAV-1 (≈ P-RNAV)*

TOPIC NAVB 7 - DEVELOPMENTS IN NAVIGATION

Subtopic NAVB 7.1 - Future developments			
BASIC NAVB 7.1.1	State future developments in navigation.	1	

SUBJECT 6: AIRCRAFT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall describe the basic principles of the theory of flight and aircraft characteristics and how these influence ATS operations.

TOPIC ACFTB 1 - INTRODUCTION TO AIRCRAFT

Subtopic ACFTB 1.1 - Application of units of measurement			
BASIC ACFTB 1.1.1	Apply the units of measurement appropriate to aircraft and principles of flight.	3	
Subtopic ACFTB 1.2 - Aviation and aircraft			
BASIC ACFTB 1.2.1	Explain the relevance of theory of flight and aircraft characteristics in ATS operations.	2	

TOPIC ACFTB 2 - PRINCIPLES OF FLIGHT

Subtopic ACFTB 2.1 - Forces acting on aircraft			
BASIC ACFTB 2.1.1	Explain the forces acting on an aircraft in flight and their interaction.	2	Lift, thrust, drag, weight during level flight *Optional content: during climb, descent, turn*
BASIC ACFTB 2.1.2	Explain causes and effects of wake turbulence.	2	Induced drag
Subtopic ACFTB 2.2 - Structural components and control of an aircraft			
BASIC ACFTB 2.2.1	Describe the main structural components of an aircraft.	2	Rotary and fixed wing, tail plane, fuselage, flap, aileron, elevator, rudder, landing gear
BASIC ACFTB 2.2.2	Explain how the pilot controls the movements of an aircraft.	2	*Optional content: rudder, aileron, elevator, throttle, rotary wing controls*
BASIC ACFTB 2.2.3	Explain the factors affecting aircraft stability.	2	
Subtopic ACFTB 2.3 - Flight envelope			
BASIC ACFTB 2.3.1	Characterise the critical factors which affect aircraft performance.	2	Maximum speeds, minimum and stall speeds, ceiling, critical angle of attack, maximum ROC

TOPIC ACFTB 3 - AIRCRAFT CATEGORIES

Subtopic ACFTB 3.1 - Aircraft categories

BASIC ACFTB 3.1.1	List the different categories of aircraft.	1	*Optional content: fixed wing, rotary wing, balloon, glider*

Subtopic ACFTB 3.2 - Wake turbulence categories

BASIC ACFTB 3.2.1	List the wake turbulence categories.	1	ICAO wake turbulence categories

Subtopic ACFTB 3.3 - ICAO approach categories

BASIC ACFTB 3.3.1	List the ICAO approach categories.	1	ICAO Doc 8168

Subtopic ACFTB 3.4 - Environmental categories

BASIC ACFTB 3.4.1	List ICAO noise classification.	1	ICAO Annex 16

TOPIC ACFTB 4 - AIRCRAFT DATA

Subtopic ACFTB 4.1 - Recognition

BASIC ACFTB 4.1.1	Recognise the most commonly used aircraft.	1	

Subtopic ACFTB 4.2 - Performance data

BASIC ACFTB 4.2.1	State the ICAO aircraft type designators and categories for the most commonly used aircraft.	1	Type designators, approach and wake turbulence categories
BASIC ACFTB 4.2.2	State the standard average performance data of the most commonly used aircraft.	1	Rate of climb/descent, cruising speed, ceiling

TOPIC ACFTB 5 - AIRCRAFT ENGINES

Subtopic ACFTB 5.1 - Piston engines			
BASIC ACFTB 5.1.1	Explain the operating principles, advantages and disadvantages of the piston engine and propeller.	2	Piston engines, fixed pitch, variable pitch, number of blades
Subtopic ACFTB 5.2 - Jet engines			
BASIC ACFTB 5.2.1	Explain the operating principles, advantages and disadvantages of the jet engine.	2	
BASIC ACFTB 5.2.2	List the different types of jet engines.	1	
Subtopic ACFTB 5.3 - Turboprop engines			
BASIC ACFTB 5.3.1	Explain the operating principles, advantages and disadvantages of the turboprop engine and propeller.	2	
Subtopic ACFTB 5.4 - Aviation fuels			
BASIC ACFTB 5.4.1	List the most common aviation fuels.	1	

TOPIC ACFTB 6 - AIRCRAFT SYSTEMS AND INSTRUMENTS

Subtopic ACFTB 6.1 - Flight instruments			
BASIC ACFTB 6.1.1	Explain the basic operating principles and interpretation of the information displayed by flight instruments.	2	Altimeter, air speed indicator, vertical speed indicator, turn and bank indicator, artificial horizon, gyrosyn compass
BASIC ACFTB 6.1.2	Explain the impact of errors and abnormal indications of flight instruments on aircraft operations.	2	*Optional content: Pitot-static failures, unreliable gyro source*
Subtopic ACFTB 6.2 - Navigational instruments			
BASIC ACFTB 6.2.1	Describe the basic on-board operating principles and interpretation of the information displayed by navigational instruments/systems.	2	*Optional content: ADF, VOR (TACAN), DME, ILS, MLS, inertial reference system, satellite-based systems*

Subtopic ACFTB 6.3 - Engine instruments			
BASIC ACFTB 6.3.1	List the vital engine monitoring parameters and their associated instruments.	1	*Optional content: oil pressure and temperature, engine temperature, rpm, fuel state and flow*
Subtopic ACFTB 6.4 - Aircraft systems			
BASIC ACFTB 6.4.1	Explain the use of the most common aircraft systems.	2	SSR transponder, GPWS, EFIS, flight director, autopilot, FMS, ice protection systems *Optional content: ADS capability, head up display, wind shear indicator, weather radar, hydraulic system, electrical system, environmental system*
BASIC ACFTB 6.4.2	Explain the impact of degradation/failure of the most common aircraft systems on aircraft operations.	2	Engine failure *Optional content: hydraulic failure, electrical failure, environmental system failure, degradation of aircraft position source data*

TOPIC ACFTB 7 - FACTORS AFFECTING AIRCRAFT PERFORMANCE

Subtopic ACFTB 7.1 - Take-off factors			
BASIC ACFTB 7.1.1	Explain the factors affecting aircraft during take-off.	2	Runway conditions, runway slope, wind, temperature, aerodrome elevation, aircraft mass
Subtopic ACFTB 7.2 - Climb factors			
BASIC ACFTB 7.2.1	Explain the factors affecting aircraft during climb.	2	Speed, mass, wind, temperature, cabin pressurisation, air density
Subtopic ACFTB 7.3 - Cruise factors			
BASIC ACFTB 7.3.1	Explain the factors affecting aircraft during cruise.	2	Level, cruising speed, wind, mass, cabin pressurisation

Subtopic ACFTB 7.4 - Descent and initial approach factors			
BASIC ACFTB 7.4.1	Explain the factors affecting aircraft during descent.	2	Wind, speed, rate of descent, aircraft configuration, cabin pressurisation
BASIC ACFTB 7.4.2	Explain the factors affecting an aircraft in a holding pattern.	2	Speed, level, turbulence, icing
Subtopic ACFTB 7.5 - Final approach and landing factors			
BASIC ACFTB 7.5.1	Explain the factors affecting aircraft during final approach and landing.	2	Aircraft configuration, mass, wind, wind shear, aerodrome elevation, runway conditions, runway slope,
Subtopic ACFTB 7.6 - Economic factors			
BASIC ACFTB 7.6.1	Explain the economic consequences of ATC changes on the flight profile of an aircraft.	2	Routing, flight level, speed, rates of climb or descent
Subtopic ACFTB 7.7 - Environmental factors			
BASIC ACFTB 7.7.1	Explain performance restrictions due to environmental constraints.	2	*Optional content: continuous descent operation (CDO), fuel dumping, noise abatement procedures, minimum flight levels*

SUBJECT 7: HUMAN FACTORS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall characterise factors which affect personal and team performance.

TOPIC HUMB 1 - INTRODUCTION TO HUMAN FACTORS

Subtopic HUMB 1.1 - Learning techniques			
BASIC HUMB 1.1.1	Appreciate appropriate learning techniques.	3	How the influence of interactive techniques can lead to improved learning
Subtopic HUMB 1.2 - Relevance of human factors for ATC			
BASIC HUMB 1.2.1	Explain the relevance and importance of human factors.	2	Historical background, safety impact on ATM, licensing requirements, incidents
Subtopic HUMB 1.3 - Human factors and ATC			
BASIC HUMB 1.3.1	Define human factors.	1	*Optional content: ICAO Human Factors Training Manual*
BASIC HUMB 1.3.2	Explain the relationship between human factors and the aviation environment.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Human Factors Training Manual, visits to the simulator and operational room, SHELL model, PEAR model*
BASIC HUMB 1.3.3	Explain the concept of systems.	2	People, procedures, equipment
BASIC HUMB 1.3.4	Explain ATM in systems terms.	2	
BASIC HUMB 1.3.5	Explain the consequences of a systems failure in ATS.	2	
BASIC HUMB 1.3.6	Explain the need for matching human and equipment.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Human Factors Training Manual*
BASIC HUMB 1.3.7	Explain the information requirement of ATC.	2	Relevant, timely, accurate

Subtopic HUMB 1.3 - Human factors and ATC			
BASIC HUMB 1.3.8	Describe the role of the human in the evolution of ATC.	2	*Optional content: history of ATC, airspace, communications, radar, advanced ATS systems, the future of ATC*
BASIC HUMB 1.3.9	Explain the importance of situational awareness for decision making.	2	

TOPIC HUMB 2 - HUMAN PERFORMANCE

Subtopic HUMB 2.1 - Individual behaviour			
BASIC HUMB 2.1.1	Explain the differences and commonalities that exist between people.	2	*Optional content: attitudes, cultural, language*
BASIC HUMB 2.1.2	Explain the dangers of boredom.	2	
BASIC HUMB 2.1.3	Explain the dangers of overconfidence and complacency.	2	
BASIC HUMB 2.1.4	Explain the dangers of fatigue.	2	Sleep disturbance, heavy workload
Subtopic HUMB 2.2 - Safety culture and professional conduct			
BASIC HUMB 2.2.1	Characterise the role of air traffic controller for positive safety culture.	2	
BASIC HUMB 2.2.2	Describe the need for professional standards in ATC.	2	*Optional content: adherence to rules and regulations etc.*
BASIC HUMB 2.2.3	Appreciate the needed basic professional attitudes appropriate to a high level of safety.	3	*Optional content: punctuality, rigour, adherence to rules, teamwork attitude*
BASIC HUMB 2.2.4	Describe the impact of responsibility on controllers action(s).	2	Responsibility as a guidance for appropriate action
BASIC HUMB 2.2.5	Recognise the different responsibilities of a controller.	1	Prospective and retrospective responsibility, guilt and obligation, types of responsibility (moral, welfare, legal, task, role responsibility etc.)

Subtopic HUMB 2.3 - Health and well-being			
BASIC HUMB 2.3.1	Consider the effect of health on performance.	2	*Optional content: fitness, diet, drugs, alcohol*
Subtopic HUMB 2.4 - Teamwork			
BASIC HUMB 2.4.1	Describe the differences between social human relations and professional interactions.	2	
BASIC HUMB 2.4.2	Describe the different types and characters in a team.	2	*Optional content: leader, follower*
BASIC HUMB 2.4.3	Appreciate the principles of teamwork.	3	*Optional content: team membership, group dynamics, advantages/disadvantages of teamwork, conflicts and their solutions*
BASIC HUMB 2.4.4	Describe leader style and group interaction.	2	
Subtopic HUMB 2.5 - Basic needs of people at work			
BASIC HUMB 2.5.1	List basic needs of people at work.	1	*Optional content: balance between individual ability and workload, working time and rest periods; adequate physical working conditions, positive working environment*
BASIC HUMB 2.5.2	Characterise the factors of work satisfaction.	2	*Optional content: money, achievement, recognition, advancement, challenge*
Subtopic HUMB 2.6 - Stress			
BASIC HUMB 2.6.1	Define stress.	1	Stress definition *Optional content: EATCHIP Human Factors Module - Stress*
BASIC HUMB 2.6.2	Describe stress symptoms and sources.	2	Behavioural changes, lifestyle changes, physical symptoms, crisis events, main causes of stress *Optional content: EATCHIP Human Factors Module - Stress*

Subtopic HUMB 2.6 - Stress			
BASIC HUMB 2.6.3	Describe the stages of stress.	2	Stress performance curve *Optional content: EATCHIP Human Factors Module - Stress*
BASIC HUMB 2.6.4	Appreciate techniques for stress management.	3	*Optional content: relaxation techniques, diet and lifestyle, exercise, EATCHIP Human Factors Module - Stress*

TOPIC HUMB 3 - HUMAN ERROR

Subtopic HUMB 3.1 - Dangers of error			
BASIC HUMB 3.1.1	Recognise the dangers of error in ATC.	1	*Optional content: Air Traffic Control-Human Performance Factors, (Anne Isaac 1999), Human Factors in Air Traffic Control, (V. David Hopkin 1995)*
Subtopic HUMB 3.2 - Definition of human error			
BASIC HUMB 3.2.1	Define human error.	1	
BASIC HUMB 3.2.2	Describe the factors which contribute to cause error.	2	Fatigue, lack of skill, misunderstanding, multitasking, lack of information, distraction, lack of work satisfaction
Subtopic HUMB 3.3 - Classification of human error			
BASIC HUMB 3.3.1	State the types of errors.	1	*Optional content: slips, lapses, mistakes*
BASIC HUMB 3.3.2	Define violations.	1	
BASIC HUMB 3.3.3	Differentiate between errors and violations of rules.	2	
BASIC HUMB 3.3.4	Describe the three levels of performance according to the Rasmussen model.	2	Skill based, knowledge based, rule based

Subtopic HUMB 3.4 - Risk analysis and risk management			
BASIC HUMB 3.4.1	Describe risk analysis and risk management of human systems and error.	2	Active failures and latent conditions *Optional content: Reason model, HFACS (Human Factors Analysis & Classification System) model, Heinrich Theory*
BASIC HUMB 3.4.2	Apply one risk analysis model on error during a case study.	3	

TOPIC HUMB 4 - COMMUNICATION

Subtopic HUMB 4.1 - Importance of good communications in ATC			
BASIC HUMB 4.1.1	Appreciate the importance of good communications in ATC.	3	
Subtopic HUMB 4.2 - Communication process			
BASIC HUMB 4.2.1	Define communication.	1	
BASIC HUMB 4.2.2	Define the communication process.	1	*Optional content: sender, encoder, transmitter, signal, interference, reception, decoder, receiver, feedback*
Subtopic HUMB 4.3 - Communication modes			
BASIC HUMB 4.3.1	Describe the factors which affect verbal communication.	2	*Optional content: word choice, intonation, speed, tone, distortion, load, expectation, noise, interruption, language knowledge (i.e. accent, dialect, vocabulary)*
BASIC HUMB 4.3.2	Describe the factors which affect non-verbal communication.	2	*Optional content: touch, choice, expectation, noise, interruption*
BASIC HUMB 4.3.3	Apply good communication practices.	3	Speaking and listening

TOPIC HUMB 5 - THE WORK ENVIRONMENT

Subtopic HUMB 5.1 - Ergonomics and the need for good design			
BASIC HUMB 5.1.1	Define ergonomics.	1	
BASIC HUMB 5.1.2	Recognise the need for good building design.	1	*Optional content: light, insulation, decor, space, facilities*
BASIC HUMB 5.1.3	Explain the need for good work position design.	2	*Optional content: anthropometry (seating, work station design, input device, etc.)*
Subtopic HUMB 5.2 - Equipment and tools			
BASIC HUMB 5.2.1	Characterise the equipment and tools that will be used in simulation in accordance with the SHELL model.	2	The physical environment, visual displays, suites, input devices, communications equipment, console profile and layout
Subtopic HUMB 5.3 - Automation			
BASIC HUMB 5.3.1	Explain the reasons for automation.	2	
BASIC HUMB 5.3.2	Describe the advantages and constraints of automation.	2	

SUBJECT 8: EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall explain the basic working principles of equipment that is in general use in ATC and appreciate how this equipment aids the controller in providing safe and efficient ATS.

TOPIC EQPSB 1 - ATC EQUIPMENT

Subtopic EQPSB 1.1 - Main types of ATC equipment

BASIC EQPSB 1.1.1	Explain the relevance of ATC equipment.	2	CWP, Communication equipment, ATS surveillance systems

TOPIC EQPSB 2 - RADIO

Subtopic EQPSB 2.1 - Radio theory

BASIC EQPSB 2.1.1	State the principles of radio waves.	1	
BASIC EQPSB 2.1.2	Describe the characteristics of radio waves.	2	Propagation, limitations
BASIC EQPSB 2.1.3	State the use, characteristics and limitations of frequency bands.	1	Use in ATC, navigation and communications, use and application in the Aeronautical Mobile Service, HF, VHF, UHF
BASIC EQPSB 2.1.4	State the different uses of radio wave spectrum.	1	

Subtopic EQPSB 2.2 - Direction finding

BASIC EQPSB 2.2.1	State the principles and use of VDF/UDF.	1	VDF/UDF, QDM, QDR, QTF
BASIC EQPSB 2.2.2	State the precision of VDF/UDF used in the State system.	1	

TOPIC EQPSB 3 - COMMUNICATION EQUIPMENT

Subtopic EQPSB 3.1 - Radio communications

BASIC EQPSB 3.1.1	State the use of the radio in ATC.	1	
BASIC EQPSB 3.1.2	Describe the working principles of a transmitting and receiving system.	2	
BASIC EQPSB 3.1.3	Explain the effect of antenna shadowing on RTF communications.	2	

Subtopic EQPSB 3.2 - Voice communication between ATS units/positions

BASIC EQPSB 3.2.1	Describe the use of other voice communications in ATC.	2	*Optional content: telephone, interphone, intercom*

Subtopic EQPSB 3.3 - Data link communications

BASIC EQPSB 3.3.1	Explain the use and benefits of controller pilot datalink communications (CPDLC).	2	

Subtopic EQPSB 3.4 - Airline communications

BASIC EQPSB 3.4.1	State the use of SELCAL.	1	
BASIC EQPSB 3.4.2	Explain the use and benefits of Aircraft Communications Addressing and Reporting System (ACARS).	2	

TOPIC EQPSB 4 - INTRODUCTION TO SURVEILLANCE

Subtopic EQPSB 4.1 - Surveillance concept in ATS

BASIC EQPSB 4.1.1	Describe the concept of surveillance for the provision of ATS.	2	

TOPIC EQPSB 5 - RADAR

Subtopic EQPSB 5.1 - Principles of radar			
BASIC EQPSB 5.1.1	State the principles of radar.	1	
BASIC EQPSB 5.1.2	Recognise the characteristics of radar wavelengths.	1	
BASIC EQPSB 5.1.3	Recognise the use, characteristics and limitations of different radar types.	1	*Optional content: frequency bands, long and short-range radar, weather radar, high-resolution radar*
Subtopic EQPSB 5.2 - Primary radar			
BASIC EQPSB 5.2.1	Explain the working principles of PSR.	2	
Subtopic EQPSB 5.3 - Secondary radar			
BASIC EQPSB 5.3.1	Explain the working principles of SSR.	2	Mode A, Mode C
BASIC EQPSB 5.3.2	Explain SSR code management	2	Discrete, non-discrete codes, special codes
BASIC EQPSB 5.3.3	Explain the effect of antenna shadowing on SSR operation.	2	
Subtopic EQPSB 5.4 - Use of radars			
BASIC EQPSB 5.4.1	Explain the use of PSR/SSR in ATC.	2	Area, approach, aerodrome, surface movement radar, DFTI
BASIC EQPSB 5.4.2	Explain the advantages and disadvantages of PSR/SSR.	2	
Subtopic EQPSB 5.5 - Mode S			
BASIC EQPSB 5.5.1	Explain the principles of Mode S.	2	
BASIC EQPSB 5.5.2	Explain the use of Mode S in ATC systems.	2	

TOPIC EQPSB 6 - AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE

Subtopic EQPSB 6.1 - Principles of automatic dependent surveillance			
BASIC EQPSB 6.1.1	State the different applications of ADS.	1	ADS-B, ADS-C
BASIC EQPSB 6.1.2	Explain the working principles of ADS.	2	
Subtopic EQPSB 6.2 - Use of automatic dependent surveillance			
BASIC EQPSB 6.2.1	Describe the use of ADS in ATC.	2	Area, approach, aerodrome ICAO Doc 4444
BASIC EQPSB 6.2.2	Explain the limitations of ADS.	2	Dependency on GNSS, dependency on airborne equipment

TOPIC EQPSB 7 - MULTILATERATION

Subtopic EQPSB 7.1 - Principles of multilateration			
BASIC EQPSB 7.1.1	State the different applications of MLAT.	1	*Optional content: ATC, environmental management, airport operations, LAM, WAM*
BASIC EQPSB 7.1.2	Explain the working principles of MLAT.	2	*Optional content: passive and active MLAT*
Subtopic EQPSB 7.2 - Use of multilateration			
BASIC EQPSB 7.2.1	Describe the use of MLAT in ATC.	2	Area, approach, aerodrome
BASIC EQPSB 7.2.2	Explain the limitations of MLAT.	2	Dependency on airborne equipment

TOPIC EQPSB 8 - SURVEILLANCE DATA PROCESSING

Subtopic EQPSB 8.1 - Surveillance data networking

BASIC EQPSB 8.1.1	Explain the advantages and disadvantages of different surveillance technologies.	2	Data quality, coverage, refresh rate, reliability, redundancy, cost-effectiveness
BASIC EQPSB 8.1.2	Describe the implementation of Surveillance Data Networks.	2	*Optional content: different technologies/sensors, network*

Subtopic EQPSB 8.2 - Working principles of surveillance data networking

BASIC EQPSB 8.2.1	Explain the working principles of surveillance data processing.	2	Track fusion process, surveillance information presented on CWP
BASIC EQPSB 8.2.2	State other use of processed surveillance data.	1	*Optional content: safety nets, airport operations, environmental management*

TOPIC EQPSB 9 - FUTURE EQUIPMENT

Subtopic EQPSB 9.1 - New developments

BASIC EQPSB 9.1.1	State the developments in the equipment field for introduction in the near future.	1	

TOPIC EQPSB 10 - AUTOMATION IN ATS

Subtopic EQPSB 10.1 - Principles of automation

BASIC EQPSB 10.1.1	Describe the principles of automation in communication and datalinks in ATS.	2	

Subtopic EQPSB 10.2 - Aeronautical fixed telecommunication network (AFTN)

BASIC EQPSB 10.2.1	Describe the principles of AFTN.	2	

Subtopic EQPSB 10.3 - On-line data interchange			
BASIC EQPSB 10.3.1	Describe the benefits of automatic exchange of ATS data in coordination and transfer processes.	2	Accuracy, speed and safety, non-verbal communications
BASIC EQPSB 10.3.2	Describe the limitations of automatic exchange of ATS data in coordination.	2	Non-recognition of a systems failure
Subtopic EQPSB 10.4 - Systems used for the automatic dissemination of information			
BASIC EQPSB 10.4.1	State the working principles of broadcasting systems.	1	*Optional content: ATIS, VOLMET*
BASIC EQPSB 10.4.2	Explain the use of ATIS and VOLMET in ATS.	2	

TOPIC EQPSB 11 - WORKING POSITIONS

Subtopic EQPSB 11.1 - Working position equipment			
BASIC EQPSB 11.1.1	Recognise equipment in a working position.	1	*Optional content: FPB, radio, telephone and other communication equipment, relevant maps and charts, strip printer, teleprinter, clock, information monitors, situation displays*
Subtopic EQPSB 11.2 - Aerodrome control			
BASIC EQPSB 11.2.1	Recognise equipment to be found specifically in a TWR.	1	*Optional content: wind indicator, aerodrome traffic monitor, SMR, crash alarm, signalling lamp, lighting control panel, runway-in-use indicator, binoculars, signalling/flare gun, IRVR and altimeter setting indicators, local information systems*
Subtopic EQPSB 11.3 - Approach control			
BASIC EQPSB 11.3.1	Recognise equipment to be found specifically in an APP.	1	*Optional content: sequencing system, PAR, RVR indicators*
Subtopic EQPSB 11.4 - Area control			
BASIC EQPSB 11.4.1	Recognise equipment to be found specifically in an ACC.	1	

SUBJECT 9: PROFESSIONAL ENVIRONMENT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall recognise the need for close cooperation with other parties concerning ATM operations and aspects of environmental protection.

TOPIC PENB 1 - FAMILIARISATION

Subtopic PENB 1.1 - ATS and aerodrome facilities			
BASIC PENB 1.1.1	Recognise civil and military ATS facilities.	1	*Optional content: TWR, APP, ACC, AIS, RCC, Air Defence Unit*
BASIC PENB 1.1.2	Recognise airport facilities and local operators.	1	*Optional content: fire and emergency services, airline operations*

TOPIC PENB 2 - AIRSPACE USERS

Subtopic PENB 2.1 - Civil aviation			
BASIC PENB 2.1.1	Describe airspace usage by civil aircraft.	2	*Optional content: commercial flying, recreational flying, gliders, balloons, calibration flights, aerial photography, parachute dropping, UASs*
Subtopic PENB 2.2 - Military			
BASIC PENB 2.2.1	Describe airspace usage by the military.	2	Airspace reservations, training, interception, in-flight refuelling, UASs *Optional content: low-level flying, test flights, special military operations*
Subtopic PENB 2.3 - Expectations and requirements of pilots			
BASIC PENB 2.3.1	Recognise the expectations and requirements of pilots.	1	
BASIC PENB 2.3.2	State the use of standard operating procedures (SOPs) by aircraft operators.	1	

TOPIC PENB 3 - CUSTOMER RELATIONS

Subtopic PENB 3.1 - Customer relations			
BASIC PENB 3.1.1	State the role of ATC as a service provider.	1	
BASIC PENB 3.1.2	Recognise the means by which ATC is funded.	1	

TOPIC PENB 4 - ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Subtopic PENB 4.1 - Environmental protection			
BASIC PENB 4.1.1	Describe the impact aviation has on the environment.	2	Noise, air quality, climate change, third-party risks
BASIC PENB 4.1.2	Explain the role of ATC in the concept of sustainable development.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Annex 16*
BASIC PENB 4.1.3	State how to measure, monitor and mitigate the impact aviation has on the environment.	1	*Optional content: EU ETS, SES initiative, EUROCONTROL role, continuous descent operations (CDO), collaborative environmental management (CEM)*

www.eurocontrol.int

Network Manager
nominated by
the European Commission

EUROCONTROL

EUROCONTROL Specification

EUROCONTROL Specifications for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training

Annex 2: Aerodrome Control Visual Rating - ADV

Edition: 2.0
Edition date: 02/04/2015
Reference Number: EUROCONTROL-SPEC-157

EUROPEAN ORGANISATION
FOR THE SAFETY OF AIR NAVIGATION

EUROCONTROL

EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training

Annex 2 Aerodrome Control Visual Rating ADV

Edition Number	**:**	**2.0**
Edition Date	**:**	**02/04/2015**
Status	**:**	**Released Issue**
Intended for	**:**	**NMD Stakeholders**

NETWORK MANAGER DIRECTORATE

Page intentionally left blank

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Annex 2 of the EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training V2.0 details the training objectives for the **Rating ATC training: Aerodrome Control Visual**.

For training organisations providing ATCO training to meet the requirements laid down in the **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340 laying down technical requirements and administrative procedures relating to air traffic controllers' licences and certificates**, and the acceptable means of compliance (AMCs) associated with the regulation, this syllabus does not change any of the content in the regulation, but rather provides a document that combines the relevant elements into a familiar user format. For European organisations not required to comply with EU legislation, it provides an **Aerodrome Control Visual Rating training syllabus** that retains references to ICAO documentation.

Rating training is defined ***as theoretical and practical training designed to impart knowledge and practical skills related to a specific rating and, if applicable, rating endorsement.***

The composition and topics were chosen based on the **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340** Annex I — Rating training (Reference: Annex I — Part ATCO Subpart D, Section 2, ATCO.D.010(a)(2)(i)) and ICAO Annex 1 requirements for an Air Traffic Control licence. The structure of the syllabus reflects a logical grouping of objectives into coherent subjects.

The order of subjects and objectives is neither intended to convey a pedagogical sequence nor to indicate a relative level of importance. No recommendation is made in this area. When teaching the objectives, it is envisaged that different training methodologies will be used.

Prior to developing or updating the **ADV Rating training course,** training providers must be familiar with the information contained in the EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training V2.0, particularly Section 6 (How to use this document) which contains, amongst other items, the fundamental principles that are applied to the Specification.

Page intentionally left blank

Contents

Page intentionally left blank

SUBJECT 1: INTRODUCTION TO THE COURSE

The subject objective is:

Learners shall know and understand the training programme that they will follow and learn how to obtain the appropriate information.

TOPIC INTR 1 - COURSE MANAGEMENT

Subtopic INTR 1.1 - Course introduction				
ADV INTR 1.1.1	Explain the aims and main objectives of the course.	2		ALL
Subtopic INTR 1.2 - Course administration				
ADV INTR 1.2.1	State course administration.	1		ALL
Subtopic INTR 1.3 - Study material and training documentation				
ADV INTR 1.3.1	Use appropriate documentation and their sources for course studies.	3	*Optional content: training documentation, library, CBT library, web, learning management server*	ALL
ADV INTR 1.3.2	Integrate appropriate information into course studies.	4	Training documentation *Optional content: supplementary information, library*	ALL

TOPIC INTR 2 - INTRODUCTION TO THE ATC TRAINING COURSE

Subtopic INTR 2.1 - Course content and organisation				
ADV INTR 2.1.1	State the different training methods applied in the course.	1	Theoretical training, practical training, self-study, types of training events	ALL
ADV INTR 2.1.2	State the subjects of the course and their purpose.	1		ALL
ADV INTR 2.1.3	Describe the organisation of theoretical training.	2	*Optional content: course programme*	ALL
ADV INTR 2.1.4	Describe the organisation of practical training.	2	*Optional content: PTP, simulation, briefing, debriefing, course programme*	ALL

Subtopic INTR 2.2 - Training ethos				
ADV INTR 2.2.1	Recognise the feedback mechanisms available.	1	Training progress, assessment, briefing, debriefing, learner/instructor feedback, instructor/instructor feedback	ALL
Subtopic INTR 2.3 - Assessment process				
ADV INTR 2.3.1	Describe the assessment process.	2		ALL

SUBJECT 2: AVIATION LAW

The subject objective is:

Learners shall know, understand and apply the Rules of the Air and the Regulations regarding reporting, airspace and appreciate the Licensing and Competence principles.

TOPIC LAW 1 - ATCO LICENSING/CERTIFICATE OF COMPETENCE

Subtopic LAW 1.1 - Privileges and conditions

ADV LAW 1.1.1	Appreciate the conditions which shall be met to issue an Aerodrome Control Visual rating.	3	Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on ATCO Licences ICAO Annex 1 *Optional content: National documents*	ADV
ADV LAW 1.1.2	Explain how to maintain and update professional knowledge and skills to retain competence in the operational environment.	2		ALL
ADV LAW 1.1.3	Explain the conditions for suspension/revocation of ATCO licence.	2	Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on ATCO Licences ICAO Annex 1	ALL

TOPIC LAW 2 - RULES AND REGULATIONS

Subtopic LAW 2.1 - Reports

ADV LAW 2.1.1	List the standard forms for reports.	1	Air traffic incident report *Optional content: routine air reports, breach of regulations, watch/log book, records*	ALL
ADV LAW 2.1.2	Describe the functions of, and processes for, reporting.	2	Reporting culture, air traffic incident report *Optional content: breach of regulations, watch/log book, records, voluntary reporting, ESARR 2*	ALL
ADV LAW 2.1.3	Use forms for reporting.	3	Regulation (EU) No 376/2014, air traffic incident reporting form(s) ICAO Doc 4444 Appendix 4, air traffic incident reporting form(s) *Optional content: routine air reports, breach of regulations, watch/log book, records*	ALL

Subtopic LAW 2.2 - Airspace				
ADV LAW 2.2.1	Appreciate classes and structure of airspace and their relevance to Aerodrome Control Visual rating operations.	3		ADV
ADV LAW 2.2.2	Provide planning, coordination and control actions appropriate to the airspace classification and structure.	4	*Optional content: Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 2, ICAO Annex 11, international requirements, civil requirements, military requirements, areas of responsibility, sectorization, national requirements*	ALL
ADV LAW 2.2.3	Appreciate responsibility for terrain clearance.	3		ALL

TOPIC LAW 3 - ATC SAFETY MANAGEMENT

Subtopic LAW 3.1 - Feedback process				
ADV LAW 3.1.1	State the importance of controller contribution to the feedback process.	1	*Optional content: voluntary reporting*	ALL
ADV LAW 3.1.2	Describe how reported occurrences are analysed.	2	*Optional content: ESARR 2, local procedures*	ALL
ADV LAW 3.1.3	Name the means used to disseminate recommendations.	1	*Optional content: safety letters, safety boards web pages*	ALL
ADV LAW 3.1.4	Appreciate the 'Just Culture' concept.	3	Benefits, prerequisites, constraints *Optional content: EAM 2 GUI 6, GAIN Report*	ALL

Subtopic LAW 3.2 - Safety Investigation			
ADV LAW 3.2.1	Describe role and mission of Safety Investigation in the improvement of safety.	2	ALL
ADV LAW 3.2.2	Define working methods of Safety Investigation.	1	ALL

SUBJECT 3: AIR TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall manage air traffic to ensure safe, orderly and expeditious services.

TOPIC ATM 1 - PROVISION OF SERVICES

Subtopic ATM 1.1 - Aerodrome control service				
ADV ATM 1.1.1	Appreciate areas of responsibility.	3	Control zone, traffic circuit, manoeuvring area, movement area, vicinity *Optional content: ATZ*	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 1.1.2	Provide aerodrome control service.	4	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 7030, ICAO Doc 4444, operation manuals ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 7030, ICAO Doc 4444, operation manuals	ADV ADI
Subtopic ATM 1.2 - Flight information service (FIS)				
ADV ATM 1.2.1	Describe the information that shall be passed to aircraft by an aerodrome controller.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 1.2.2	Provide FIS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	*ALL*
ADV ATM 1.2.3	Issue appropriate information.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, essential local traffic, traffic information	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 1.2.4	Appreciate the use of ATIS for the provision of flight information service by aerodrome controller.	3		ADV ADI

Subtopic ATM 1.3 - Alerting service (ALRS)				
ADV ATM 1.3.1	Provide ALRS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
ADV ATM 1.3.2	Respond to distress and urgency messages and signals.	3	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 10, ICAO Doc 4444 ICAO Annex 10, ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: EUROCONTROL Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations*	ALL
Subtopic ATM 1.4 - ATS system capacity and air traffic flow management				
ADV ATM 1.4.1	Appreciate principles of ATS system capacity and air traffic flow management.	3	*Optional content: EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual, Slot management, Slot allocation procedures*	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 1.4.2	Organise traffic to take account of flow management.	4	*Optional content: departure sequence*	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 1.4.3	Inform appropriate authority.	3	*Optional content: abnormal situations, decrease in sector capacity, limitations on systems and equipment, changes in workload/capacity, unusual meteorological conditions, relevant information: reported ground-based incidents, forest fire, smoke, oil pollution*	ADV ADI

TOPIC ATM 2 - COMMUNICATION

Subtopic ATM 2.1 - Effective communication

ADV ATM 2.1.1	Use approved phraseology.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: ICAO Doc 9432 RTF manual, standard words and phrases as contained in ICAO Annex 10 Vol. 2*	ALL
ADV ATM 2.1.2	Ensure effective communication.	4	Communication techniques, readback/verification of readback	ALL

TOPIC ATM 3 - ATC CLEARANCES AND ATC INSTRUCTIONS

Subtopic ATM 3.1 - ATC clearances

ADV ATM 3.1.1	Issue appropriate ATC clearances.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
ADV ATM 3.1.2	Integrate appropriate ATC clearances in control service.	4		ALL
ADV ATM 3.1.3	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL

Subtopic ATM 3.2 - ATC instructions

ADV ATM 3.2.1	Issue appropriate ATC instructions.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
ADV ATM 3.2.2	Integrate appropriate ATC instructions in control service.	4		ALL
ADV ATM 3.2.3	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL

TOPIC ATM 4 - COORDINATION

Subtopic ATM 4.1 - Necessity for coordination				
ADV ATM 4.1.1	Identify the need for coordination.	3		ALL
Subtopic ATM 4.2 - Tools and methods for coordination				
ADV ATM 4.2.1	Use the available tools for coordination.	3	*Optional content: electronic transfer of flight data, telephone, interphone, intercom, direct speech, radiotelephone (RTF), local agreements, automated system coordination*	ALL
Subtopic ATM 4.3 - Coordination procedures				
ADV ATM 4.3.1	Initiate appropriate coordination.	3	Delegation/transfer of responsibility for air-ground communications and separation, transfer of control, etc. ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: release point*	ALL
ADV ATM 4.3.2	Analyse effect of coordination requested by an adjacent position/unit.	4	*Optional content: delegation/transfer of responsibility for air-ground communications and separation, release point, transfer of control, etc.*	ALL
ADV ATM 4.3.3	Select, after negotiation, an appropriate course of action.	5		ALL
ADV ATM 4.3.4	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL
ADV ATM 4.3.5	Coordinate in the provision of FIS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
ADV ATM 4.3.6	Coordinate in the provision of ALRS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL

TOPIC ATM 5 - ALTIMETRY AND LEVEL ALLOCATION

Subtopic ATM 5.1 - Altimetry				
ADV ATM 5.1.1	Allocate levels according to altimetry data.	4	ICAO Doc 8168, ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
ADV ATM 5.1.2	Ensure separation according to altimetry data.	4	*Optional content: transition level, transition altitude, transition layer, height, flight level, altitude, vertical distance to airspace boundaries*	ALL

TOPIC ATM 6 - SEPARATIONS

Subtopic ATM 6.1 - Separation between departing aircraft				
ADV ATM 6.1.1	Provide separation between departing aircraft.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
Subtopic ATM 6.2 - Separation of landing aircraft and preceding landing or departing aircraft				
ADV ATM 6.2.1	Provide separation of landing aircraft and preceding landing or departing aircraft.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV *ADI*
Subtopic ATM 6.3 - Time-based wake turbulence longitudinal separation				
ADV ATM 6.3.1	Provide time-based wake turbulence longitudinal separation.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV *ADI*
Subtopic ATM 6.4 - Reduced separation minima				
ADV ATM 6.4.1	Provide reduced separation minima.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV *ADI*

TOPIC ATM 7 - AIRBORNE COLLISION AVOIDANCE SYSTEMS AND GROUND-BASED SAFETY NETS

Subtopic ATM 7.1 - Airborne collision avoidance systems				
ADV ATM 7.1.1	Differentiate between ACAS advisory thresholds and aerodrome separation standards.	2	ICAO Doc 9863	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 7.1.2	Describe the controller responsibility during and following an ACAS RA reported by pilot.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
ADV ATM 7.1.3	Respond to pilot notification of actions based on airborne systems warnings.	3	ACAS, TAWS *Optional content: EUROCONTROL ACAS web page*	ALL

Subtopic ATM 7.2 - Ground-based safety nets				
ADV ATM 7.2.1	Respond to available ground-based safety nets warnings.	3	*Optional content: anti-incursion*	ADV ADI

TOPIC ATM 8 - DATA DISPLAY

Subtopic ATM 8.1 - Data management				
ADV ATM 8.1.1	Update the data display to accurately reflect the traffic situation.	3	*Optional content: information displayed, strip marking procedures, electronic information data displays, actions based on traffic display information, calculation of EETs*	ALL
ADV ATM 8.1.2	Analyse pertinent data on data displays.	4		ALL
ADV ATM 8.1.3	Organise pertinent data on data displays.	4		ALL
ADV ATM 8.1.4	Obtain flight plan information.	3	CPL, FPL, supplementary information *Optional content: RPL, AFIL, etc.*	ALL
ADV ATM 8.1.5	Use flight plan information.	3		ALL

TOPIC ATM 9 - OPERATIONAL ENVIRONMENT (SIMULATED)

Subtopic ATM 9.1 - Integrity of the operational environment				
ADV ATM 9.1.1	Obtain information concerning the operational environment.	3	*Optional content: briefing, notices, local orders, verification of information*	ALL
ADV ATM 9.1.2	Ensure the integrity of the operational environment.	4	*Optional content: frequency, VOLMET, ATIS, SIGMET, systems set-up, integrity of displays*	ADV ADI
Subtopic ATM 9.2 - Verification of the currency of operational procedures				
ADV ATM 9.2.1	Check all relevant documentation before managing traffic.	3	*Optional content: briefing, LOAs, NOTAM, AICs*	ALL

Subtopic ATM 9.3 - Handover-takeover				
ADV ATM 9.3.1	Transfer information to the relieving controller.	3		ALL
ADV ATM 9.3.2	Obtain information from the controller handing over.	3		ALL
TOPIC ATM 10 - PROVISION OF AN AERODROME CONTROL SERVICE				
Subtopic ATM 10.1 - Responsibility for the provision				
ADV ATM 10.1.1	Explain the responsibility for the provision of an aerodrome control service.	2	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Annex 11	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.1.2	Describe the division of responsibility between air traffic control units.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	*ALL*
ADV ATM 10.1.3	Describe the responsibility in regard to military traffic.	2	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: ICAO Doc 9554*	*ALL*
ADV ATM 10.1.4	Describe the responsibility in regard to unmanned free balloons.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.1.5	Appreciate the influence of operational requirements.	3	*Optional content: military flying, calibration flights, aerial photography*	*ALL*
Subtopic ATM 10.2 - Functions of aerodrome control tower				
ADV ATM 10.2.1	Manage the general functions of aerodrome control.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.2.2	Manage the suspension of VFR operations.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
Subtopic ATM 10.3 - Traffic management process				
ADV ATM 10.3.1	Ensure that situational awareness is maintained.	4	Information gathering, observation, traffic projection	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.3.2	Detect conflicts in time for appropriate resolution.	4		ALL

Subtopic ATM 10.3 - Traffic management process				
ADV ATM 10.3.3	Identify potential solutions to achieve a safe and effective flow of aerodrome traffic.	3		ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.3.4	Evaluate possible outcomes of different control actions.	5		ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.3.5	Select an appropriate plan in time to achieve safe and effective flow of aerodrome traffic.	5		ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.3.6	Ensure an adequate priority of actions.	4		*ALL*
ADV ATM 10.3.7	Execute plan in a timely manner.	3		ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.3.8	Ensure a safe and efficient outcome is achieved.	4	Traffic monitoring, adaptability and follow up	ALL
Subtopic ATM 10.4 - Aeronautical ground lights				
ADV ATM 10.4.1	Select appropriate aeronautical ground lights.	5	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
Subtopic ATM 10.5 - Information to aircraft by aerodrome control tower				
ADV ATM 10.5.1	Provide information related to the operation of aircraft.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.5.2	Provide information on aerodrome conditions.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI

Subtopic ATM 10.6 - Control of aerodrome traffic				
ADV ATM 10.6.1	Predict positions of aircraft in the aerodrome traffic and taxi circuits.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.6.2	Manage traffic on the manoeuvring area.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, aircraft, vehicles *Optional content: runway inspection*	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.6.3	Manage traffic in accordance with procedural changes.	4	*Optional content: taxiway closure*	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.6.4	Balance the workload against personal capacity.	5	*Optional content: re-planning, prioritising solutions, denying requests, delaying traffic*	ADV ADI
Subtopic ATM 10.7 - Control of traffic in the traffic circuit				
ADV ATM 10.7.1	Manage traffic in the traffic circuit.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, meteorological phenomena, geographical knowledge, environmental factors	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.7.2	Manage arriving and departing traffic.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, allocation of the order of priority, meteorological phenomena, wake turbulence, environmental factors	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.7.3	Integrate the serviceability of radio aids in the management of aerodrome traffic.	4	*Optional content: UDF, VDF, MLS, ILS, NDB, VOR, DME*	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.7.4	Integrate surface conditions into the control of aerodrome traffic.	4	*Optional content: damp, wet, water patches, flooding, snow, slush, ice, braking action*	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.7.5	Integrate information about meteorological phenomena into the control of aerodrome traffic.	4	*Optional content: clouds, precipitation, visibility, wind, meteorological hazards*	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.7.6	Integrate the information provided by situation displays.	4	Use, advantages, disadvantages	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.7.7	Initiate missed approach.	3	*Optional content: obstructed runway*	ADV ADI

Subtopic ATM 10.8 - Runway in use				
ADV ATM 10.8.1	Select the runway in use.	5	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.8.2	Coordinate runway in use.	4	*Optional content: approach control, area control, runway selection, change of runway*	ADV ADI
ADV ATM 10.8.3	Manage traffic in the event of runway-in-use change.	4		ADV ADI

SUBJECT 4: METEOROLOGY

The subject objective is:

Learners shall acquire, decode and make proper use of meteorological information relevant to the provision of ATS.

TOPIC MET 1 - METEOROLOGICAL PHENOMENA

Subtopic MET 1.1 - Meteorological phenomena

ADV MET 1.1.1	Appreciate the impact of different cloud types.	3	Cumulus, cumulonimbus *Optional content: stratus, nimbostratus, etc.*	ADV ADI
ADV MET 1.1.2	Appreciate the impact of precipitation.	3	Precipitation and microphysics *Optional content: rain, snow, sleet, hail*	ADV ADI
ADV MET 1.1.3	Appreciate the impact of atmospheric obscurity.	3	 *Optional content: advection fog, radiation fog, mixing, evaporation, mist, drizzle*	ADV ADI
ADV MET 1.1.4	Appreciate the effect and impact of wind.	3	Gusting, veering, backing *Optional content: land breezes, sea breezes, Föhn*	ADV ADI
ADV MET 1.1.5	Appreciate the effect and danger of hazardous meteorological phenomena.	3	Wind shear, turbulence, thunderstorms, icing, microbursts	ADV ADI
ADV MET 1.1.6	Appreciate the effect of a frontal system on aerodrome operations.	3		ADV ADI
ADV MET 1.1.7	Integrate data about meteorological phenomena into provision of ATS.	4	Clearances, instructions and transmitted information *Optional content: relevant meteorological phenomena*	*ALL*

TOPIC MET 2 - SOURCES OF METEOROLOGICAL DATA

Subtopic MET 2.1 - Meteorological instruments				
ADV MET 2.1.1	Extract information from meteorological instruments.	3	*Optional content: anemometer, RVR indicator, cloud base indicator, ceilometer, barometer*	ADV ADI
Subtopic MET 2.2 - Other sources of meteorological data				
ADV MET 2.2.1	Decode information from meteorological data displays.	3		ADV ADI
ADV MET 2.2.2	Use appropriate communication tools and networks to obtain meteorological data.	3		ADV ADI
ADV MET 2.2.3	Relay meteorological information.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: flight information centre, adjacent ATS unit*	*ALL*

SUBJECT 5: NAVIGATION

The subject objective is:

Learners shall analyse all navigational aspects in order to organise the traffic.

TOPIC NAV 1 - MAPS AND AERONAUTICAL CHARTS

Subtopic NAV 1.1 - Maps and charts

ADV NAV 1.1.1	Decode symbols and information displayed on aeronautical maps and charts.	3	Visual approach/departure charts, aerodrome charts *Optional content: military maps and charts*	ADV
ADV NAV 1.1.2	Use relevant maps and charts.	3	Visual approach/departure charts, aerodrome charts *Optional content: Military maps and charts*	ADV

TOPIC NAV 2 - INSTRUMENT NAVIGATION

Subtopic NAV 2.1 - Navigational systems

ADV NAV 2.1.1	Describe the possible operational status of navigational systems.	2	*Optional content: NDB, VOR, DME*	ADV
ADV NAV 2.1.2	Decode operational status displays of navigational systems.	3	*Optional content: NDB, VOR, DME*	ADV
ADV NAV 2.1.3	Appreciate the effect of precision, limitations and change of the operational status of navigational systems.	3	*Optional content: limitations, status, degraded procedures*	*ALL*

Subtopic NAV 2.2 - Stabilised approach

ADV NAV 2.2.1	Describe the concept of stabilised approach.	2	ICAO Doc 8168 *Optional content: SKYbrary, Regulation (EC) No 1899/2006*	ADV ADI APP APS
ADV NAV 2.2.2	Appreciate the effect of late change of runway-in-use for landing aircraft.	3		ADV ADI

SUBJECT 6: AIRCRAFT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall assess and integrate aircraft performance in the provision of ATS.

TOPIC ACFT 1 - AIRCRAFT INSTRUMENTS

Subtopic ACFT 1.1 - Aircraft instruments

ADV ACFT 1.1.1	Integrate information from aircraft instruments provided by the pilot in the provision of ATS.	4		ALL
ADV ACFT 1.1.2	Explain the operation of aircraft radio equipment.	2	*Optional content: radios (number of), emergency radios*	ALL

TOPIC ACFT 2 - AIRCRAFT CATEGORIES

Subtopic ACFT 2.1 - Wake turbulence

ADV ACFT 2.1.1	Explain the wake turbulence effect and associated hazards to the succeeding aircraft.	2		ALL
ADV ACFT 2.1.2	Appreciate the techniques used to prevent hazards associated with wake turbulence on succeeding aircraft.	3		ALL

TOPIC ACFT 3 - FACTORS AFFECTING AIRCRAFT PERFORMANCE

Subtopic ACFT 3.1 - Take-off factors

ADV ACFT 3.1.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft on take-off.	4	*Optional content: runway conditions, runway slope, aerodrome elevation, wind, temperature, aircraft configuration, airframe contamination and aircraft mass*	ADV ADI

Subtopic ACFT 3.2 - Climb factors

ADV ACFT 3.2.1	Appreciate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during climb.	3	*Optional content: speed, mass, air density, wind and temperature*	ADV ADI

Subtopic ACFT 3.3 - Final approach and landing factors				
ADV ACFT 3.3.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during final approach and landing.	4	*Optional content: wind, aircraft configuration, mass, runway conditions, runway slope, aerodrome elevation*	ADV ADI
Subtopic ACFT 3.4 - Economic factors				
ADV ACFT 3.4.1	Integrate consideration of economic factors affecting aircraft.	4	*Optional content: starting-up, taxiing, routing, departure sequence*	ADV ADI
Subtopic ACFT 3.5 - Environmental factors				
ADV ACFT 3.5.1	Appreciate the performance restrictions due to environmental constraints.	3	*Optional content: noise abatement procedures, minimum flight altitudes, bird hazard*	ADV ADI

TOPIC ACFT 4 - AIRCRAFT DATA

Subtopic ACFT 4.1 - Recognition of aircraft types				
ADV ACFT 4.1.1	Characterise a representative sample of aircraft which will be encountered in the operational/working environment.	2	Recognition, ICAO type designators, wake turbulence categories	ADV
Subtopic ACFT 4.2 - Performance data				
ADV ACFT 4.2.1	Integrate the average performance data of a representative sample of aircraft which will be encountered in the operational/working environment into the provision of a control service.	4	Performance data under a representative variety of circumstances	ADV ADI

SUBJECT 7: HUMAN FACTORS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall recognise the necessity to constantly extend their knowledge and analyse factors which affect personal and team performance.

TOPIC HUM 1 - PSYCHOLOGICAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 1.1 - Cognitive

ADV HUM 1.1.1	Describe the human information processing model.	2	Attention, perception, memory, situational awareness, decision making, response	ALL
ADV HUM 1.1.2	Describe the factors which influence human information processing.	2	Confidence, stress, learning, knowledge, experience, fatigue, alcohol/drugs, distraction, interpersonal relations	ALL
ADV HUM 1.1.3	Monitor the effect of human information processing factors on decision making.	3	*Optional content: workload, stress, interpersonal relations, distraction, confidence*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 2 - MEDICAL AND PHYSIOLOGICAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 2.1 - Fatigue

ADV HUM 2.1.1	State factors that cause fatigue.	1	Shift work *Optional content: night shifts and rosters*	ALL
ADV HUM 2.1.2	Describe the onset of fatigue.	2	*Optional content: lack of concentration, listlessness, irritability, frustration, ICAO Circular 241 – AN/145 Human factors in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ADV HUM 2.1.3	Recognise the onset of fatigue in self.	1	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 241 – AN/145 Human factors in Air Traffic Control*	ALL

Subtopic HUM 2.1 - Fatigue				
ADV HUM 2.1.4	Recognise the onset of fatigue in others.	1		ALL
ADV HUM 2.1.5	Describe appropriate action when recognising fatigue.	2		ALL
Subtopic HUM 2.2 - Fitness				
ADV HUM 2.2.1	Recognise signs of lack of personal fitness.	1		ALL
ADV HUM 2.2.2	Describe actions when aware of a lack of personal fitness.	2		ALL

TOPIC HUM 3 - SOCIAL AND ORGANISATIONAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 3.1 - Team resource management (TRM)				
ADV HUM 3.1.1	State the relevance of TRM.	1	*Optional content: TRM course, EUROCONTROL Guidelines for the development of TRM training*	ALL
ADV HUM 3.1.2	State the content of the TRM concept.	1	*Optional content: team work, human error, team roles, stress, decision making, communication, situational awareness*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 3.2 - Teamwork and team roles				
ADV HUM 3.2.1	Identify reasons for conflict.	3		ALL
ADV HUM 3.2.2	Describe actions to prevent human conflicts.	2	*Optional content: TRM team roles*	ALL
ADV HUM 3.2.3	Describe strategies to cope with human conflicts.	2	*Optional content: in your team, in the simulator*	ALL

Subtopic HUM 3.3 - Responsible behaviour				
ADV HUM 3.3.1	Consider the factors which influence responsible behaviour.	2	*Optional content: situation, team, personal situation and judgement, instance of justification, moral motivation, personality*	ALL
ADV HUM 3.3.2	Apply responsible judgement.	3	Case study and discussion about a dilemma situation	ALL

TOPIC HUM 4 - STRESS

Subtopic HUM 4.1 - Stress				
ADV HUM 4.1.1	Recognise the effects of stress on performance.	1	Stress and its symptoms in self and in others	ALL
Subtopic HUM 4.2 - Stress management				
ADV HUM 4.2.1	Act to reduce stress.	3	The effect of personality in coping with stress, the benefits of active stress management	ALL
ADV HUM 4.2.2	Respond to stressful situation by offering, asking or accepting assistance.	3	*Optional content: the benefits of offering, accepting and asking for help in stressful situations*	ALL
ADV HUM 4.2.3	Recognise the effect of shocking and stressful events.	1	Self and others, abnormal situations, CISM	ALL
ADV HUM 4.2.4	Consider the benefits of Critical Incident Stress Management (CISM).	2		ALL
ADV HUM 4.2.5	Explain procedures used following an incident/accident.	2	*Optional content: CISM, counselling, human element*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 5 - HUMAN ERROR

Subtopic HUM 5.1 - Human error

ADV HUM 5.1.1	Explain the relationship between error and safety.	2	Number and combination of errors, proactive versus reactive approach to discovery of error *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ADV HUM 5.1.2	Differentiate between the types of error.	2	Slips, lapses, mistakes *Optional content: Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ADV HUM 5.1.3	Describe error-prone conditions.	2	*Optional content: increase in traffic, changes in procedures, complexities of systems or traffic, weather, unusual occurrences*	ALL
ADV HUM 5.1.4	Collect examples of different error types, their causes and consequences in ATC.	3	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ADV HUM 5.1.5	Explain how to detect errors to compensate for them.	2	STCA, MSAW, individual and collective strategy *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ADV HUM 5.1.6	Execute corrective actions.	3	Error compensation *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL

Subtopic HUM 5.1 - Human error				
ADV HUM 5.1.7	Explain the importance of error management.	2	*Optional content: prevention of incidents, safety improvement, revision of procedures and/or working practises*	ALL
ADV HUM 5.1.8	Describe the impact on an ATCO following an occurrence/incident.	2	*Optional content: reporting, SMS, investigation, CISM*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 5.2 - Violation of rules				
ADV HUM 5.2.1	Explain the causes and dangers of violation of rules becoming accepted as a practice.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 6 - COLLABORATIVE WORK

Subtopic HUM 6.1 - Communication				
ADV HUM 6.1.1	Use communication effectively in ATC.	3		ALL
ADV HUM 6.1.2	Analyse examples of pilot and controller communication for effectiveness.	4		ALL
Subtopic HUM 6.2 - Collaborative work within the same area of responsibility				
ADV HUM 6.2.1	List communication means between controllers in charge of the same area of responsibility (sector or tower).	1	*Optional content: electronic, written, verbal and non-verbal communication*	ALL
ADV HUM 6.2.2	Explain consequences of the use of communication means on effectiveness.	2	*Optional content: strips legibility and encoding, labels designation, feedback*	ALL
ADV HUM 6.2.3	List possible actions to provide a safe position handover.	1	*Optional content: rigour, preparation, overlap time*	ALL
ADV HUM 6.2.4	Explain consequences of a missed position handover process.	2		ALL

Subtopic HUM 6.3 - Collaborative work between different areas of responsibility				
ADV HUM 6.3.1	List factors and means for an effective coordination between sectors and/or tower positions.	1	*Optional content: other sectors constraints, electronic coordination tools*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 6.4 - Controller / pilot cooperation				
ADV HUM 6.4.1	Describe parameters affecting controller/pilot cooperation.	2	*Optional content: workload, mutual knowledge, controller vs pilot mental picture*	ALL

SUBJECT 8: EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall integrate knowledge and understanding of the basic working principles of equipment and systems and comply with the equipment and system degradation procedures in the provision of ATS.

TOPIC EQPS 1 - VOICE COMMUNICATIONS

Subtopic EQPS 1.1 - Radio communications

ADV EQPS 1.1.1	Operate two-way communication equipment.	3	Transmit/receive switches, procedures *Optional content: frequency selection, standby equipment*	ALL
ADV EQPS 1.1.2	Identify indications of operational status of radio equipment.	3	*Optional content: indicator lights, serviceability displays, selector/frequency displays*	ALL

Subtopic EQPS 1.2 - Other voice communications

ADV EQPS 1.2.1	Operate landline communications.	3	*Optional content: telephone, interphone and intercom equipment*	ALL

TOPIC EQPS 2 - AUTOMATION IN ATS

Subtopic EQPS 2.1 - Aeronautical fixed telecommunication network (AFTN)

ADV EQPS 2.1.1	Decode AFTN messages.	3	*Optional content: movement and control messages, NOTAM, SNOWTAM, BIRDTAM, etc.*	ALL

Subtopic EQPS 2.2 - Automatic data interchange

ADV EQPS 2.2.1	Use automatic data transfer equipment where available.	3	*Optional content: sequencing systems, automated information and coordination, OLDI*	ADV ADI APS ACS
ADV EQPS 2.2.2	Explain operational application of CPDLC for departure clearance (DCL) delivery and D-ATIS.	2	ICAO Doc 9694	ADV ADI

TOPIC EQPS 3 - CONTROLLER WORKING POSITION

Subtopic EQPS 3.1 - Operation and monitoring of equipment				
ADV EQPS 3.1.1	Monitor the technical integrity of the controller working position.	3	Notification procedures, responsibilities	ALL
ADV EQPS 3.1.2	Operate the equipment of the controller working position.	3	*Optional content: situation displays, flight progress board, flight data display, radio, telephone, maps and charts, strip-printer, clock, information systems, UDF/VDF*	ALL
ADV EQPS 3.1.3	Operate available equipment in abnormal and emergency situations.	3		ALL
Subtopic EQPS 3.2 - Situation displays and information systems				
ADV EQPS 3.2.1	Use situation displays.	3		ALL
ADV EQPS 3.2.2	Check availability of information material.	3		ALL
ADV EQPS 3.2.3	Obtain information from equipment.	3	*Optional content: information from wind direction indicator*	ADV ADI
Subtopic EQPS 3.3 - Flight data systems				
ADV EQPS 3.3.1	Use the flight data information at controller working position.	3		ALL

TOPIC EQPS 4 - FUTURE EQUIPMENT

Subtopic EQPS 4.1 - New developments				
ADV EQPS 4.1.1	Recognise future developments.	1	New advanced systems	ALL

TOPIC EQPS 5 - EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS LIMITATIONS AND DEGRADATION

Subtopic EQPS 5.1 - Reaction to limitations

ADV EQPS 5.1.1	Take account of the limitations of equipment and systems.	2		ALL
ADV EQPS 5.1.2	Respond to technical deficiencies of the operational position.	3	Notification procedures, responsibilities	ALL

Subtopic EQPS 5.2 - Communication equipment degradation

ADV EQPS 5.2.1	Identify that communication equipment has degraded.	3	*Optional content: ground-air, ground-ground and landline communications*	ADV ADI
ADV EQPS 5.2.2	Integrate contingency procedures in the event of communication equipment degradation.	4	*Optional content: total or partial degradation of ground-air, ground-ground and landline communications; alternative methods of transferring data*	ADV ADI

Subtopic EQPS 5.3 - Navigational equipment degradation

ADV EQPS 5.3.1	Identify when a navigational equipment failure will affect operational ability.	3	*Optional content: VOR, navigational aids*	ALL

SUBJECT 9: PROFESSIONAL ENVIRONMENT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall identify the need for close cooperation with other parties concerning ATM operations and appreciate aspects of environmental protection.

TOPIC PEN 1 - FAMILIARISATION

Subtopic PEN 1.1 - Study visit to aerodrome				
ADV PEN 1.1.1	Appreciate the functions and provision of an operational aerodrome control service.	3	Study visit to TWR	ADV ADI

TOPIC PEN 2 - AIRSPACE USERS

Subtopic PEN 2.1 - Contributors to civil ATS operations				
ADV PEN 2.1.1	Characterise civil ATS activities at aerodrome.	2	Study visit to TWR *Optional content: familiarisation visits to APP, ACC, AIS, RCC*	ADV ADI
ADV PEN 2.1.2	Characterise other parties interfacing with ATS operations.	2	*Optional content: familiarisation visits to engineering services, fire and emergency services, airline operations offices*	ALL
Subtopic PEN 2.2 - Contributors to military ATS operations				
ADV PEN 2.2.1	Characterise military ATS activities.	2	*Optional content: familiarisation visits to TWR, APP, ACC, AIS, RCC, Air Defence Units*	ALL

TOPIC PEN 3 - CUSTOMER RELATIONS

Subtopic PEN 3.1 - Provision of services and user requirements				
ADV PEN 3.1.1	Identify the role of ATC as a service provider.	3		ALL
ADV PEN 3.1.2	Appreciate ATS users requirements.	3		ALL

TOPIC PEN 4 - ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Subtopic PEN 4.1 - Environmental protection				
ADV PEN 4.1.1	Describe the environmental constraints on aerodrome operations.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 303 - Operational opportunities to minimise fuel use and reduce emissions*	ADV ADI APP APS
ADV PEN 4.1.2	Explain the use of Collaborative Environmental Management (CEM) process at airports.	2		ADV ADI APP APS
ADV PEN 4.1.3	Appreciate the mitigation techniques used at aerodromes to minimise aviation's impact on the environment.	3	*Optional content: noise abatement procedures, flight efficiency*	ADV ADI

SUBJECT 10: ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall develop professional attitudes to manage traffic in abnormal and emergency situations.

TOPIC ABES 1 - ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS (ABES)

Subtopic ABES 1.1 - Overview of ABES

ADV ABES 1.1.1	List common abnormal and emergency situations.	1	*Optional content: EATM Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations, ambulance flights, ground based safety nets alerts, airframe failure, unreliable instruments, runway incursion*	ALL
ADV ABES 1.1.2	Identify potential or actual abnormal and emergency situations.	3		ALL
ADV ABES 1.1.3	Take into account the procedures for given abnormal and emergency situations.	2	Bird strike, aborted take-off *Optional content: ICAO Doc 4444*	ADV ADI
ADV ABES 1.1.4	Take into account that procedures do not exist for all abnormal and emergency situations.	2	*Optional content: real life examples*	ALL
ADV ABES 1.1.5	Consider how the evolution of a situation may have an impact on safety.	2	*Optional content: separation, information, coordination*	ALL

TOPIC ABES 2 - SKILLS IMPROVEMENT

Subtopic ABES 2.1 - Communication effectiveness

ADV ABES 2.1.1	Ensure effective communication in all circumstances including the case where standard phraseology is not applicable.	4	Phraseology, vocabulary, readback, silence instruction	ALL
ADV ABES 2.1.2	Apply change of radiotelephony call sign.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL

Subtopic ABES 2.2 - Avoidance of mental overload				
ADV ABES 2.2.1	Describe actions to keep control of the situation.	2	*Optional content: sector splitting, holding, flow management, task delegation*	ALL
ADV ABES 2.2.2	Organise priority of actions.	4		ALL
ADV ABES 2.2.3	Ensure effective circulation of information.	4	*Optional content: between executive and planner/coordinator, with the supervisor, between sectors, between ACC, APP and TWR , with ground staff, etc.*	ALL
ADV ABES 2.2.4	Consider asking for help.	2		ALL
Subtopic ABES 2.3 - Air / ground cooperation				
ADV ABES 2.3.1	Collect appropriate information relevant to the situation.	3		ALL
ADV ABES 2.3.2	Assist the pilot.	3	Pilot workload *Optional content: instructions, information, support, human factors, etc.*	ALL
TOPIC ABES 3 - PROCEDURES FOR ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS				
Subtopic ABES 3.1 - Application of procedures for ABES				
ADV ABES 3.1.1	Apply the procedures for given abnormal and emergency situations.	3	*Optional content: EATM Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations, ambulance flights, ground based safety nets alerts, airframe failure*	ALL
Subtopic ABES 3.2 - Radio failure				
ADV ABES 3.2.1	Describe the procedures followed by a pilot when he/she experiences complete or partial radio failure.	2	ICAO Doc 7030 *Optional content: military procedures*	ALL
ADV ABES 3.2.2	Apply the procedures to be followed when a pilot experiences complete or partial radio failure.	3	*Optional content: prolonged loss of communication*	ALL

Subtopic ABES 3.3 - Unlawful interference and aircraft bomb threat				
ADV ABES 3.3.1	Apply ATC procedures associated with unlawful interference and aircraft bomb threat.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
Subtopic ABES 3.4 - Strayed or unidentified aircraft				
ADV ABES 3.4.1	Apply the procedures in the case of strayed aircraft.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: inside controlled airspace, outside controlled airspace*	ALL
ADV ABES 3.4.2	Apply the procedures in the case of unidentified aircraft.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
ADV ABES 3.4.3	Provide navigational assistance to aircraft.	4	*Optional content: diverted aircraft, aircraft lost or unsure of position, information derived locally or from radar service or from other pilots, nearest most suitable aerodrome, track, heading, distance, aerodrome information, any other relevant navigational assistance, ICAO Doc 4444, etc.*	ADV ADI
Subtopic ABES 3.5 - Runway incursion				
ADV ABES 3.5.1	Apply ATC procedures associated with runway incursion.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI

SUBJECT 11: AERODROMES

The subject objective is:

Learners shall recognise and understand the design and layout of aerodromes.

TOPIC AGA 1 - AERODROME DATA, LAYOUT AND COORDINATION

Subtopic AGA 1.1 - Definitions

ADV AGA 1.1.1	Define aerodrome data.	1	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14 *Optional content: aerodrome elevation, reference point, apron, movement area, manoeuvring area, hot spot*	ADV ADI APP APS

Subtopic AGA 1.2 - Coordination

ADV AGA 1.2.1	Identify the information that has to be passed between Air Traffic Services (ATS) and the airport authority.	3	Airport conditions, fire/rescue category, condition of ground equipment and NAVAIDs, AIRAC, Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM Airport conditions, Fire/rescue category, Condition of ground equipment and NAVAIDs, AIRAC, ICAO Annex 14	APP APS ADV ADI

TOPIC AGA 2 - MOVEMENT AREA

Subtopic AGA 2.1 - Movement area

ADV AGA 2.1.1	Describe movement area.	2	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14	ADV ADI APP APS

Subtopic AGA 2.1 - Movement area				
ADV AGA 2.1.2	Describe the marking of obstacles and unusable or unserviceable areas.	2	Flags, signs on pavement, lights	ADV ADI APP APS
ADV AGA 2.1.3	Identify the information on conditions of the movement area that have to be passed to aircraft.	3	Essential information on aerodrome conditions	ADV ADI APP APS
Subtopic AGA 2.2 - Manoeuvring area				
ADV AGA 2.2.1	Describe manoeuvring area.	2	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14	ADV ADI APP APS
ADV AGA 2.2.2	Describe taxiway.	2		ADV ADI APP APS
ADV AGA 2.2.3	Describe the daylight marking on taxiways.	2		ADV ADI APP APS
ADV AGA 2.2.4	Describe taxiway lighting.	2		ADV ADI APP APS
Subtopic AGA 2.3 - Runways				
ADV AGA 2.3.1	Describe runway.	2	Runway, runway surface, runway strip, shoulder, runway end safety areas, clearways, stopways	ADV ADI APP APS
ADV AGA 2.3.2	Describe non-instrument runway.	2	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14	ADV *ADI* *APP* *APS*
ADV AGA 2.3.3	Explain declared distances.	2	TORA, TODA, ASDA, LDA	ADV *ADI* *APP* *APS*

Subtopic AGA 2.3 - Runways				
ADV AGA 2.3.4	Explain the differences between ACN and PCN.	2	Strength of pavements	ADV *ADI* *APP* *APS*
ADV AGA 2.3.5	Describe the daylight markings on runways.	2	*Optional content: runway designator, centre line, threshold, aiming point, fixed distance, touchdown zone, side strip, colour*	ADV *ADI* *APP* *APS*
ADV AGA 2.3.6	Describe runway lights.	2	*Optional content: colour, centre line, intensity, edge, touchdown zone, threshold, barettes*	ADV *ADI* *APP* *APS*
ADV AGA 2.3.7	Explain the functions of visual landing aids.	2	*Optional content: AVASI, VASI, PAPI*	ADV *ADI* *APP* *APS*
ADV AGA 2.3.8	Describe the approach lighting systems.	2	Centre line, cross bars, stroboscopic lights, colours, intensity and brightness	ADV *ADI* *APP* *APS*
ADV AGA 2.3.9	Characterise the effect of water/ice on runways.	2		ADV *ADI* *APP* *APS*
ADV AGA 2.3.10	Explain braking action.	2	Braking action coefficient	ADV *ADI* *APP* *APS*
ADV AGA 2.3.11	Explain the effect of runway visual range on aerodrome operation	2		ADV *ADI* *APP* *APS*

TOPIC AGA 3 - OBSTACLES

Subtopic AGA 3.1 - Obstacle-free airspace around aerodromes

ADV AGA 3.1.1	Explain the necessity for establishing and maintaining an obstacle-free airspace around aerodromes.	2		ADV ADI APP APS

TOPIC AGA 4 - MISCELLANEOUS EQUIPMENT

Subtopic AGA 4.1 - Location

ADV AGA 4.1.1	Explain the location of different aerodrome ground equipment.	2	*Optional content: LLZ, GP, VDF, radio communication or ATS surveillance systems sensors, stopbars, AVASI, VASI, PAPI*	ADV ADI APP APS

www.eurocontrol.int

Network Manager
nominated by
the European Commission

EUROCONTROL

EUROCONTROL Specification

EUROCONTROL Specifications for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training

Annex 3: Aerodrome Control Instrument Rating for Tower - ADI (TWR)

Edition: 2.0
Edition date: 02/04/2015
Reference Number: EUROCONTROL-SPEC-157

EUROPEAN ORGANISATION
FOR THE SAFETY OF AIR NAVIGATION

EUROCONTROL

EUROCONTROL
Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training

Annex 3
Aerodrome Control Instrument Rating for Tower
ADI (TWR)

Edition Number	**:**	**2.0**
Edition Date	**:**	**02/04/2015**
Status	**:**	**Released Issue**
Intended for	**:**	**NMD Stakeholders**

NETWORK MANAGER DIRECTORATE

Page intentionally left blank

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Annex 3 of the EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training V2.0 details the training objectives for the **Rating ATC training: Aerodrome Control Instrument Rating for Tower**.

For training organisations providing ATCO training to meet the requirements laid down in the **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340 laying down technical requirements and administrative procedures relating to air traffic controllers' licences and certificates**, and the acceptable means of compliance (AMCs) associated with the regulation, this syllabus does not change any of the content in the regulation, but rather provides a document that combines the relevant elements into a familiar user format. For European organisations not required to comply with EU legislation, it provides an **Aerodrome Control Instrument Rating for Tower training syllabus** that retains references to ICAO documentation.

Rating training is defined ***as theoretical and practical training designed to impart knowledge and practical skills related to a specific rating and, if applicable, rating endorsement.***

The composition and topics were chosen based on the **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340** Annex I — Rating training (Reference: Annex I — Part ATCO Subpart D, Section 2, ATCO.D.010(a)(2)(ii)) and ICAO Annex 1 requirements for an Air Traffic Control licence. The structure of the syllabus reflects a logical grouping of objectives into coherent subjects.

The order of subjects and objectives is neither intended to convey a pedagogical sequence nor to indicate a relative level of importance. No recommendation is made in this area. When teaching the objectives, it is envisaged that different training methodologies will be used.

Prior to developing or updating the **ADI (TWR) Rating training course,** training providers must be familiar with the information contained in the EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training V2.0, particularly Section 6 (How to use this document) which contains, amongst other items, the fundamental principles that are applied to the Specification.

Page intentionally left blank

Contents

Page intentionally left blank

SUBJECT 1: INTRODUCTION TO THE COURSE

The subject objective is:

Learners shall know and understand the training programme that they will follow and learn how to obtain the appropriate information.

TOPIC INTR 1 - COURSE MANAGEMENT

Subtopic INTR 1.1 - Course introduction				
ADI INTR 1.1.1	Explain the aims and main objectives of the course.	2		ALL
Subtopic INTR 1.2 - Course administration				
ADI INTR 1.2.1	State course administration.	1		ALL
Subtopic INTR 1.3 - Study material and training documentation				
ADI INTR 1.3.1	Use appropriate documentation and their sources for course studies.	3	*Optional content: training documentation, library, CBT library, web, learning management server*	ALL
ADI INTR 1.3.2	Integrate appropriate information into course studies.	4	Training documentation *Optional content: supplementary information, library*	ALL

TOPIC INTR 2 - INTRODUCTION TO THE ATC TRAINING COURSE

Subtopic INTR 2.1 - Course content and organisation				
ADI INTR 2.1.1	State the different training methods applied in the course.	1	Theoretical training, practical training, self-study, types of training events	ALL
ADI INTR 2.1.2	State the subjects of the course and their purpose.	1		ALL
ADI INTR 2.1.3	Describe the organisation of theoretical training.	2	*Optional content: course programme*	ALL
ADI INTR 2.1.4	Describe the organisation of practical training.	2	*Optional content: PTP, simulation, briefing, debriefing, course programme*	ALL
Subtopic INTR 2.2 - Training ethos				
ADI INTR 2.2.1	Recognise the feedback mechanisms available.	1	Training progress, assessment, briefing, debriefing, learner/instructor feedback, instructor/instructor feedback	ALL

Subtopic INTR 2.3 - Assessment process			
ADI INTR 2.3.1	Describe the assessment process.	2	ALL

SUBJECT 2: AVIATION LAW

The subject objective is:

Learners shall know, understand and apply the Rules of the Air and the Regulations regarding reporting, airspace and appreciate the Licensing and Competence principles.

TOPIC LAW 1 - ATCO LICENSING/CERTIFICATE OF COMPETENCE

Subtopic LAW 1.1 - Privileges and conditions

ADI LAW 1.1.1	Appreciate the conditions which shall be met to issue an Aerodrome Control Instrument rating with Tower Control endorsement.	3	Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on ATCO Licences ICAO Annex 1 *Optional content: national documents*	ADI
ADI LAW 1.1.2	Explain how to maintain and update professional knowledge and skills to retain competence in the operational environment.	2		ALL
ADI LAW 1.1.3	Explain the conditions for suspension/revocation of ATCO licence.	2	Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on ATCO Licences ICAO Annex 1	ALL

TOPIC LAW 2 - RULES AND REGULATIONS

Subtopic LAW 2.1 - Reports

ADI LAW 2.1.1	List the standard forms for reports.	1	Air traffic incident report *Optional content: routine air reports, breach of regulations, watch/log book, records*	ALL
ADI LAW 2.1.2	Describe the functions of, and processes for, reporting.	2	Reporting culture, air traffic incident report *Optional content: breach of regulations, watch/log book, records, voluntary reporting, ESARR 2*	ALL
ADI LAW 2.1.3	Use forms for reporting.	3	Regulation (EU) No 376/2014, air traffic incident reporting form(s) ICAO Doc 4444 Appendix 4, air traffic incident reporting form(s) *Optional content: routine air reports, breach of regulations, watch/log book, records*	ALL

Subtopic LAW 2.2 - Airspace				
ADI LAW 2.2.1	Appreciate classes and structure of airspace and their relevance to Aerodrome Control Instrument rating with Tower Control endorsement operations.	3		ADI
ADI LAW 2.2.2	Provide planning, coordination and control actions appropriate to the airspace classification and structure.	4	*Optional content: Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 2, ICAO Annex 11, international requirements, civil requirements, military requirements, areas of responsibility, sectorization, national requirements*	ALL
ADI LAW 2.2.3	Appreciate responsibility for terrain clearance.	3		ALL

TOPIC LAW 3 - ATC SAFETY MANAGEMENT

Subtopic LAW 3.1 - Feedback process				
ADI LAW 3.1.1	State the importance of controller contribution to the feedback process.	1	*Optional content: voluntary reporting*	ALL
ADI LAW 3.1.2	Describe how reported occurrences are analysed.	2	*Optional content: ESARR 2, local procedures*	ALL
ADI LAW 3.1.3	Name the means used to disseminate recommendations.	1	*Optional content: safety letters, safety boards web pages*	ALL
ADI LAW 3.1.4	Appreciate the 'Just Culture' concept.	3	Benefits, prerequisites, constraints *Optional content: EAM 2 GUI 6, GAIN Report*	ALL
Subtopic LAW 3.2 - Safety Investigation				
ADI LAW 3.2.1	Describe role and mission of Safety Investigation in the improvement of safety.	2		ALL
ADI LAW 3.2.2	Define working methods of Safety Investigation.	1		ALL

SUBJECT 3: AIR TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall manage air traffic to ensure safe, orderly and expeditious services.

TOPIC ATM 1 - PROVISION OF SERVICES

Subtopic ATM 1.1 - Aerodrome control service				
ADI ATM 1.1.1	Appreciate areas of responsibility.	3	Control zone, traffic circuit, manoeuvring area, movement area, vicinity *Optional content: ATZ*	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 1.1.2	Provide aerodrome control service.	4	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 7030, ICAO Doc 4444, operation manuals ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 7030, ICAO Doc 4444, operation manuals	ADV ADI
Subtopic ATM 1.2 - Flight information service (FIS)				
ADI ATM 1.2.1	Describe the information that shall be passed to aircraft by an aerodrome controller.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 1.2.2	Provide FIS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	*ALL*
ADI ATM 1.2.3	Issue appropriate information.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, essential local traffic, traffic information	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 1.2.4	Appreciate the use of ATIS for the provision of flight information service by aerodrome controller.	3		ADV ADI

Subtopic ATM 1.3 - Alerting service (ALRS)				
ADI ATM 1.3.1	Provide ALRS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
ADI ATM 1.3.2	Respond to distress and urgency messages and signals.	3	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 10, ICAO Doc 4444 ICAO Annex 10, ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: EUROCONTROL Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations*	ALL
Subtopic ATM 1.4 - ATS system capacity and air traffic flow management				
ADI ATM 1.4.1	Appreciate principles of ATS system capacity and air traffic flow management.	3	*Optional content: EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual, Slot management, Slot allocation procedures*	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 1.4.2	Organise traffic to take account of flow management.	4	*Optional content: departure sequence*	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 1.4.3	Inform appropriate authority.	3	*Optional content: abnormal situations, decrease in sector capacity, limitations on systems and equipment, changes in workload/capacity, unusual meteorological conditions, relevant information: reported ground-based incidents, forest fire, smoke, oil pollution*	ADV ADI

TOPIC ATM 2 - COMMUNICATION

Subtopic ATM 2.1 - Effective communication				
ADI ATM 2.1.1	Use approved phraseology.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: ICAO Doc 9432 RTF manual, standard words and phrases as contained in ICAO Annex 10 Vol. 2*	ALL
ADI ATM 2.1.2	Ensure effective communication.	4	Communication techniques, readback/verification of readback	ALL

TOPIC ATM 3 - ATC CLEARANCES AND ATC INSTRUCTIONS

Subtopic ATM 3.1 - ATC clearances				
ADI ATM 3.1.1	Issue appropriate ATC clearances.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
ADI ATM 3.1.2	Integrate appropriate ATC clearances in control service.	4		ALL
ADI ATM 3.1.3	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL
Subtopic ATM 3.2 - ATC instructions				
ADI ATM 3.2.1	Issue appropriate ATC instructions.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
ADI ATM 3.2.2	Integrate appropriate ATC instructions in control service.	4		ALL
ADI ATM 3.2.3	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL

TOPIC ATM 4 - COORDINATION

Subtopic ATM 4.1 - Necessity for coordination				
ADI ATM 4.1.1	Identify the need for coordination.	3		ALL
Subtopic ATM 4.2 - Tools and methods for coordination				
ADI ATM 4.2.1	Use the available tools for coordination.	3	*Optional content: electronic transfer of flight data, telephone, interphone, intercom, direct speech, radiotelephone (RTF), local agreements, automated system coordination*	ALL
Subtopic ATM 4.3 - Coordination procedures				
ADI ATM 4.3.1	Initiate appropriate coordination.	3	Delegation/transfer of responsibility for air-ground communications and separation, transfer of control, etc. ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: release point*	ALL
ADI ATM 4.3.2	Analyse effect of coordination requested by an adjacent position/unit.	4	*Optional content: delegation/transfer of responsibility for air-ground communications and separation, release point, transfer of control, etc.*	ALL
ADI ATM 4.3.3	Select, after negotiation, an appropriate course of action.	5		ALL
ADI ATM 4.3.4	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL
ADI ATM 4.3.5	Coordinate in the provision of FIS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
ADI ATM 4.3.6	Coordinate in the provision of ALRS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL

TOPIC ATM 5 - ALTIMETRY AND LEVEL ALLOCATION

Subtopic ATM 5.1 - Altimetry				
ADI ATM 5.1.1	Allocate levels according to altimetry data.	4	ICAO Doc 8168, ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
ADI ATM 5.1.2	Ensure separation according to altimetry data.	4	*Optional content: transition level, transition altitude, transition layer, height, flight level, altitude, vertical distance to airspace boundaries*	ALL
Subtopic ATM 5.2 - Terrain clearance				
ADI ATM 5.2.1	Provide planning, coordination and control actions appropriate to the rules for minimum safe height and terrain clearance.	4	*Optional content: terrain clearance dimensions, minimum safe altitudes, transition level, minimum flight level, minimum sector altitude*	ADI

TOPIC ATM 6 - SEPARATIONS

Subtopic ATM 6.1 - Separation between departing aircraft				
ADI ATM 6.1.1	Provide separation between departing aircraft.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
Subtopic ATM 6.2 - Separation of departing aircraft from arriving aircraft				
ADI ATM 6.2.1	Provide separation of departing aircraft from arriving aircraft.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADI
Subtopic ATM 6.3 - Separation of landing aircraft and preceding landing or departing aircraft				
ADI ATM 6.3.1	Provide separation of landing aircraft and preceding landing or departing aircraft.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	*ADV* ADI
Subtopic ATM 6.4 - Time-based wake turbulence longitudinal separation				
ADI ATM 6.4.1	Provide time-based wake turbulence longitudinal separation.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADI *ADV*
Subtopic ATM 6.5 - Reduced separation minima				
ADI ATM 6.5.1	Provide reduced separation minima.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADI *ADV*

TOPIC ATM 7 - AIRBORNE COLLISION AVOIDANCE SYSTEMS AND GROUND-BASED SAFETY NETS

Subtopic ATM 7.1 - Airborne collision avoidance systems

ADI ATM 7.1.1	Differentiate between ACAS advisory thresholds and aerodrome separation standards.	2	ICAO Doc 9863	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 7.1.2	Describe the controller responsibility during and following an ACAS RA reported by pilot.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
ADI ATM 7.1.3	Respond to pilot notification of actions based on airborne systems warnings.	3	ACAS, TAWS *Optional content: EUROCONTROL ACAS web page*	ALL

Subtopic ATM 7.2 - Ground-based safety nets

ADI ATM 7.2.1	Respond to available ground-based safety nets warnings.	3	*Optional content: anti-incursion*	ADV ADI

TOPIC ATM 8 - DATA DISPLAY

Subtopic ATM 8.1 - Data management

ADI ATM 8.1.1	Update the data display to accurately reflect the traffic situation.	3	*Optional content: information displayed, strip marking procedures, electronic information data displays, actions based on traffic display information, calculation of EETs*	ALL
ADI ATM 8.1.2	Analyse pertinent data on data displays.	4		ALL
ADI ATM 8.1.3	Organise pertinent data on data displays.	4		ALL
ADI ATM 8.1.4	Obtain flight plan information.	3	CPL, FPL, supplementary information *Optional content: RPL, AFIL, etc.*	ALL
ADI ATM 8.1.5	Use flight plan information.	3		ALL

TOPIC ATM 9 - OPERATIONAL ENVIRONMENT (SIMULATED)

Subtopic ATM 9.1 - Integrity of the operational environment				
ADI ATM 9.1.1	Obtain information concerning the operational environment.	3	*Optional content: briefing, notices, local orders, verification of information*	ALL
ADI ATM 9.1.2	Ensure the integrity of the operational environment.	4	*Optional content: frequency, VOLMET, ATIS, SIGMET, systems set-up, integrity of displays*	ADV ADI
Subtopic ATM 9.2 - Verification of the currency of operational procedures				
ADI ATM 9.2.1	Check all relevant documentation before managing traffic.	3	*Optional content: briefing, LOAs, NOTAM, AICs*	ALL
Subtopic ATM 9.3 - Handover-takeover				
ADI ATM 9.3.1	Transfer information to the relieving controller.	3		ALL
ADI ATM 9.3.2	Obtain information from the controller handing over.	3		ALL

TOPIC ATM 10 - PROVISION OF AN AERODROME CONTROL SERVICE

Subtopic ATM 10.1 - Responsibility for the provision				
ADI ATM 10.1.1	Explain the responsibility for the provision of an aerodrome control service.	2	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Annex 11	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.1.2	Describe the division of responsibility between air traffic control units.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	*ALL*
ADI ATM 10.1.3	Describe the responsibility in regard to military traffic.	2	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: ICAO Doc 9554*	*ALL*
ADI ATM 10.1.4	Describe the responsibility in regard to unmanned free balloons.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.1.5	Appreciate the influence of operational requirements.	3	*Optional content: military flying, calibration flights, aerial photography*	*ALL*

Subtopic ATM 10.2 - Functions of aerodrome control tower				
ADI ATM 10.2.1	Manage the general functions of aerodrome control.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.2.2	Manage the suspension of VFR operations.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
Subtopic ATM 10.3 - Traffic management process				
ADI ATM 10.3.1	Ensure that situational awareness is maintained.	4	Information gathering, observation, traffic projection	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.3.2	Detect conflicts in time for appropriate resolution.	4		ALL
ADI ATM 10.3.3	Identify potential solutions to achieve a safe and effective flow of aerodrome traffic.	3		ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.3.4	Evaluate possible outcomes of different control actions.	5		ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.3.5	Select an appropriate plan in time to achieve safe and effective flow of aerodrome traffic.	5		ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.3.6	Ensure an adequate priority of actions.	4		*ALL*
ADI ATM 10.3.7	Execute plan in a timely manner.	3		ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.3.8	Ensure a safe and efficient outcome is achieved.	4	Traffic monitoring, adaptability and follow up	ALL
Subtopic ATM 10.4 - Aeronautical ground lights				
ADI ATM 10.4.1	Select appropriate aeronautical ground lights.	5	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
Subtopic ATM 10.5 - Information to aircraft by aerodrome control tower				
ADI ATM 10.5.1	Provide information related to the operation of aircraft.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.5.2	Provide information on aerodrome conditions.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI

Subtopic ATM 10.6 - Control of aerodrome traffic				
ADI ATM 10.6.1	Predict positions of aircraft in the aerodrome traffic and taxi circuits.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.6.2	Manage traffic on the manoeuvring area.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, aircraft, vehicles *Optional content: runway inspection*	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.6.3	Manage traffic in accordance with procedural changes.	4	*Optional content: taxiway closure*	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.6.4	Balance the workload against personal capacity.	5	*Optional content: re-planning, prioritising solutions, denying requests, delaying traffic*	ADV ADI
Subtopic ATM 10.7 - Control of traffic in the traffic circuit				
ADI ATM 10.7.1	Manage traffic in the traffic circuit.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, meteorological phenomena, geographical knowledge, environmental factors	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.7.2	Manage arriving and departing traffic.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, allocation of the order of priority, meteorological phenomena, wake turbulence, environmental factors	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.7.3	Integrate the serviceability of radio aids in the management of aerodrome traffic.	4	*Optional content: UDF, VDF, MLS, ILS, NDB, VOR, DME*	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.7.4	Integrate surface conditions into the control of aerodrome traffic.	4	*Optional content: damp, wet, water patches, flooding, snow, slush, ice, braking action*	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.7.5	Integrate information about meteorological phenomena into the control of aerodrome traffic.	4	*Optional content: clouds, precipitation, visibility, wind, meteorological hazards*	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.7.6	Integrate the information provided by situation displays.	4	Use, advantages, disadvantages	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.7.7	Initiate missed approach.	3	*Optional content: obstructed runway*	ADV ADI
Subtopic ATM 10.8 - Runway in use				
ADI ATM 10.8.1	Select the runway in use.	5	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.8.2	Coordinate runway in use.	4	*Optional content: approach control, area control, runway selection, change of runway*	ADV ADI
ADI ATM 10.8.3	Manage traffic in the event of runway-in-use change.	4		ADV ADI

TOPIC ATM 11 - PROVISION OF AERODROME CONTROL - INSTRUMENT

Subtopic ATM 11.1 - Low visibility operations and special VFR				
ADI ATM 11.1.1	Manage SVFR traffic.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADI
ADI ATM 11.1.2	Describe the Procedures for Low Visibility Operations.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	ADI
Subtopic ATM 11.2 - Departing traffic				
ADI ATM 11.2.1	Manage control of departing aircraft.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, use of situation displays, wake turbulence, appropriate departure clearances, SIDs	ADI
ADI ATM 11.2.2	Integrate departure sequence into the control of aerodrome traffic.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADI
ADI ATM 11.2.3	Provide appropriate information to departing traffic.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, use of situation displays, wake turbulence	ADI
Subtopic ATM 11.3 - Arriving traffic				
ADI ATM 11.3.1	Manage control of arriving aircraft.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, wake turbulence	ADI
ADI ATM 11.3.2	Integrate the approach sequence into the control of aerodrome traffic.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADI
ADI ATM 11.3.3	Integrate aircraft on visual approach into the aerodrome traffic.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADI
ADI ATM 11.3.4	Integrate aircraft on missed approach into the aerodrome traffic.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, use of air traffic monitors	ADI
ADI ATM 11.3.5	Integrate aircraft performing circling approach into the aerodrome traffic.	4	ICAO Doc 8168	ADI
ADI ATM 11.3.6	Provide appropriate information to arriving aircraft.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ADI
Subtopic ATM 11.4 - Aerodrome control service with advanced system support				
ADI ATM 11.4.1	Appreciate the impact of advanced systems on the provision of aerodrome control service.	3	*Optional content: surface manager (SMAN), departure manager (DMAN), automated conflicts/incursions tools, alarms and resolution advisory tools, automated assistance for surface movement planning and routing, enhanced vision technology in low visibility for controllers*	ADI

SUBJECT 4: METEOROLOGY

The subject objective is:

Learners shall acquire, decode and make proper use of meteorological information relevant to the provision of ATS.

TOPIC MET 1 - METEOROLOGICAL PHENOMENA

Subtopic MET 1.1 - Meteorological phenomena

ADI MET 1.1.1	Appreciate the impact of different cloud types.	3	Cumulus, cumulonimbus *Optional content: stratus, nimbostratus, etc.*	ADV ADI
ADI MET 1.1.2	Appreciate the impact of precipitation.	3	Precipitation and microphysics *Optional content: rain, snow, sleet, hail*	ADV ADI
ADI MET 1.1.3	Appreciate the impact of atmospheric obscurity.	3	 *Optional content: advection fog, radiation fog, mixing, evaporation, mist, drizzle*	ADV ADI
ADI MET 1.1.4	Appreciate the effect and impact of wind.	3	Gusting, veering, backing *Optional content: land breezes, sea breezes, Föhn*	ADV ADI
ADI MET 1.1.5	Appreciate the effect and danger of hazardous meteorological phenomena.	3	Wind shear, turbulence, thunderstorms, icing, microbursts	ADV ADI
ADI MET 1.1.6	Appreciate the effect of a frontal system on aerodrome operations.	3		ADV ADI
ADI MET 1.1.7	Integrate data about meteorological phenomena into provision of ATS.	4	Clearances, instructions and transmitted information *Optional content: relevant meteorological phenomena*	*ALL*

TOPIC MET 2 - SOURCES OF METEOROLOGICAL DATA

Subtopic MET 2.1 - Meteorological instruments				
ADI MET 2.1.1	Extract information from meteorological instruments.	3	*Optional content: anemometer, RVR indicator, cloud base indicator, ceilometer, barometer*	ADV ADI
Subtopic MET 2.2 - Other sources of meteorological data				
ADI MET 2.2.1	Decode information from meteorological data displays.	3		ADV ADI
ADI MET 2.2.2	Use appropriate communication tools and networks to obtain meteorological data.	3		ADV ADI
ADI MET 2.2.3	Relay meteorological information.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: flight information centre, adjacent ATS unit*	*ALL*

SUBJECT 5: NAVIGATION

The subject objective is:

Learners shall analyse all navigational aspects in order to organise the traffic.

TOPIC NAV 1 - MAPS AND AERONAUTICAL CHARTS

Subtopic NAV 1.1 - Maps and charts

ADI NAV 1.1.1	Decode symbols and information displayed on aeronautical maps and charts.	3	Instrument approach charts, SID charts, aerodrome charts, visual approach charts *Optional content: military maps and charts*	ADI APP APS
ADI NAV 1.1.2	Use relevant maps and charts.	3	Instrument approach charts, SID charts, aerodrome charts, visual approach charts *Optional content: military maps and charts*	ADI

TOPIC NAV 2 - INSTRUMENT NAVIGATION

Subtopic NAV 2.1 - Navigational systems

ADI NAV 2.1.1	Describe the possible operational status of navigational systems.	2	*Optional content: NDB, VOR, DME, ILS, MLS, ABAS, SBAS, GBAS, RNP*	ADI
ADI NAV 2.1.2	Decode operational status displays of navigational systems.	3	*Optional content: NDB, VOR, DME, ILS, MLS, D-GPS, RNAV, P-RNAV*	ADI
ADI NAV 2.1.3	Appreciate the effect of precision, limitations and change of the operational status of navigational systems.	3	*Optional content: limitations, status, degraded procedures*	*ALL*
ADI NAV 2.1.4	Manage traffic in case of change in the operational status of navigational systems.	4	*Optional content: limitations, status of ground-based systems*	ADI

Subtopic NAV 2.2 - Stabilised approach				
ADI NAV 2.2.1	Describe the concept of stabilised approach.	2	ICAO Doc 8168 *Optional content: SKYbrary, Regulation (EC) No 1899/2006*	ADV ADI APP APS
ADI NAV 2.2.2	Appreciate the effect of late change of runway-in-use for landing aircraft.	3		ADV ADI
Subtopic NAV 2.3 - Instrument departures and arrivals				
ADI NAV 2.3.1	Characterise SIDs.	2		ADI APP APS
ADI NAV 2.3.2	Describe the phases of an instrument approach procedure.	2		ADI
ADI NAV 2.3.3	Describe the relevant minima applicable for a precision/ non-precision and visual approach.	2		ADI APP APS
Subtopic NAV 2.4 - Satellite-based systems				
ADI NAV 2.4.1	State the different applications of satellite-based systems relevant for aerodrome operations.	1	*Optional content: NPA, APV-baro VNAV, APV, LPV, precision approach, ICAO Doc 8168 Vol.2*	ADI
Subtopic NAV 2.5 - PBN applications				
ADI NAV 2.5.1	State future PBN developments.	1	A-RNP, APV *Optional content: RNP 3D, RNP 4D*	ADI *APP* *ACP* *APS* *ACS*

SUBJECT 6: AIRCRAFT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall assess and integrate aircraft performance in the provision of ATS.

TOPIC ACFT 1 - AIRCRAFT INSTRUMENTS

Subtopic ACFT 1.1 - Aircraft instruments

ADI ACFT 1.1.1	Integrate information from aircraft instruments provided by the pilot in the provision of ATS.	4		ALL
ADI ACFT 1.1.2	Explain the operation of aircraft radio equipment.	2	*Optional content: radios (number of), emergency radios*	ALL
ADI ACFT 1.1.3	Explain the operation of on-board surveillance equipment.	2	Transponders: equipment Mode A, Mode C, Mode S, ADS capability	ADI APS ACS

TOPIC ACFT 2 - AIRCRAFT CATEGORIES

Subtopic ACFT 2.1 - Wake turbulence

ADI ACFT 2.1.1	Explain the wake turbulence effect and associated hazards to the succeeding aircraft.	2		ALL
ADI ACFT 2.1.2	Appreciate the techniques used to prevent hazards associated with wake turbulence on succeeding aircraft.	3		ALL

Subtopic ACFT 2.2 - Application of ICAO approach categories

ADI ACFT 2.2.1	Describe the use of ICAO approach categories.	2	ICAO Doc 8168	ADI APP APS
ADI ACFT 2.2.2	Appreciate the effect of ICAO approach categories on the traffic organisation.	3		ADI APP APS

TOPIC ACFT 3 - FACTORS AFFECTING AIRCRAFT PERFORMANCE

Subtopic ACFT 3.1 - Take-off factors				
ADI ACFT 3.1.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft on take-off.	4	*Optional content: runway conditions, runway slope, aerodrome elevation, wind, temperature, aircraft configuration, airframe contamination and aircraft mass*	ADV ADI
Subtopic ACFT 3.2 - Climb factors				
ADI ACFT 3.2.1	Appreciate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during climb.	3	*Optional content: speed, mass, air density, wind and temperature*	ADV ADI
Subtopic ACFT 3.3 - Final approach and landing factors				
ADI ACFT 3.3.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during final approach and landing.	4	*Optional content: wind, aircraft configuration, mass, runway conditions, runway slope, aerodrome elevation*	ADV ADI
Subtopic ACFT 3.4 - Economic factors				
ADI ACFT 3.4.1	Integrate consideration of economic factors affecting aircraft.	4	*Optional content: starting-up, taxiing, routing, departure sequence*	ADV ADI
Subtopic ACFT 3.5 - Environmental factors				
ADI ACFT 3.5.1	Appreciate the performance restrictions due to environmental constraints.	3	*Optional content: noise abatement procedures, minimum flight altitudes, bird hazard*	ADV ADI

TOPIC ACFT 4 - AIRCRAFT DATA

Subtopic ACFT 4.1 - Recognition of aircraft types				
ADI ACFT 4.1.1	Characterise a representative sample of aircraft which will be encountered in the operational/working environment.	2	Recognition, ICAO type designators, wake turbulence categories *Optional content: ICAO approach categories*	ADI
Subtopic ACFT 4.2 - Performance data				
ADI ACFT 4.2.1	Integrate the average performance data of a representative sample of aircraft which will be encountered in the operational/working environment into the provision of a control service.	4	Performance data under a representative variety of circumstances	ADV ADI

SUBJECT 7: HUMAN FACTORS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall recognise the necessity to constantly extend their knowledge and analyse factors which affect personal and team performance.

TOPIC HUM 1 - PSYCHOLOGICAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 1.1 - Cognitive				
ADI HUM 1.1.1	Describe the human information processing model.	2	Attention, perception, memory, situational awareness, decision making, response	ALL
ADI HUM 1.1.2	Describe the factors which influence human information processing.	2	Confidence, stress, learning, knowledge, experience, fatigue, alcohol/drugs, distraction, interpersonal relations	ALL
ADI HUM 1.1.3	Monitor the effect of human information processing factors on decision making.	3	*Optional content: workload, stress, interpersonal relations, distraction, confidence*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 2 - MEDICAL AND PHYSIOLOGICAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 2.1 - Fatigue				
ADI HUM 2.1.1	State factors that cause fatigue.	1	Shift work *Optional content: night shifts and rosters*	ALL
ADI HUM 2.1.2	Describe the onset of fatigue.	2	*Optional content: lack of concentration, listlessness, irritability, frustration, ICAO Circular 241 – AN/145 Human factors in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ADI HUM 2.1.3	Recognise the onset of fatigue in self.	1	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 241 – AN/145 Human factors in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ADI HUM 2.1.4	Recognise the onset of fatigue in others.	1		ALL
ADI HUM 2.1.5	Describe appropriate action when recognising fatigue.	2		ALL

Subtopic HUM 2.2 - Fitness				
ADI HUM 2.2.1	Recognise signs of lack of personal fitness.	1		ALL
ADI HUM 2.2.2	Describe actions when aware of a lack of personal fitness.	2		ALL

TOPIC HUM 3 - SOCIAL AND ORGANISATIONAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 3.1 - Team resource management (TRM)				
ADI HUM 3.1.1	State the relevance of TRM.	1	*Optional content: TRM course, EUROCONTROL Guidelines for the development of TRM training*	ALL
ADI HUM 3.1.2	State the content of the TRM concept.	1	*Optional content: team work, human error, team roles, stress, decision making, communication, situational awareness*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 3.2 - Teamwork and team roles				
ADI HUM 3.2.1	Identify reasons for conflict.	3		ALL
ADI HUM 3.2.2	Describe actions to prevent human conflicts.	2	*Optional content: TRM team roles*	ALL
ADI HUM 3.2.3	Describe strategies to cope with human conflicts.	2	*Optional content: in your team, in the simulator*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 3.3 - Responsible behaviour				
ADI HUM 3.3.1	Consider the factors which influence responsible behaviour.	2	*Optional content: situation, team, personal situation and judgement, instance of justification, moral motivation, personality*	ALL
ADI HUM 3.3.2	Apply responsible judgement.	3	Case study and discussion about a dilemma situation	ALL

TOPIC HUM 4 - STRESS

Subtopic HUM 4.1 - Stress				
ADI HUM 4.1.1	Recognise the effects of stress on performance.	1	Stress and its symptoms in self and in others	ALL

Subtopic HUM 4.2 - Stress management				
ADI HUM 4.2.1	Act to reduce stress.	3	The effect of personality in coping with stress, the benefits of active stress management	ALL
ADI HUM 4.2.2	Respond to stressful situation by offering, asking or accepting assistance.	3	*Optional content: the benefits of offering, accepting and asking for help in stressful situations*	ALL
ADI HUM 4.2.3	Recognise the effect of shocking and stressful events.	1	Self and others, abnormal situations, CISM	ALL
ADI HUM 4.2.4	Consider the benefits of Critical Incident Stress Management (CISM).	2		ALL
ADI HUM 4.2.5	Explain procedures used following an incident/accident.	2	*Optional content: CISM, counselling, human element*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 5 - HUMAN ERROR

Subtopic HUM 5.1 - Human error				
ADI HUM 5.1.1	Explain the relationship between error and safety.	2	Number and combination of errors, proactive versus reactive approach to discovery of error *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ADI HUM 5.1.2	Differentiate between the types of error.	2	Slips, lapses, mistakes *Optional content: Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ADI HUM 5.1.3	Describe error-prone conditions.	2	*Optional content: increase in traffic, changes in procedures, complexities of systems or traffic, weather, unusual occurrences*	ALL
ADI HUM 5.1.4	Collect examples of different error types, their causes and consequences in ATC.	3	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL

Subtopic HUM 5.1 - Human error				
ADI HUM 5.1.5	Explain how to detect errors to compensate for them.	2	STCA, MSAW, individual and collective strategy *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ADI HUM 5.1.6	Execute corrective actions.	3	Error compensation *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ADI HUM 5.1.7	Explain the importance of error management.	2	*Optional content: prevention of incidents, safety improvement, revision of procedures and/or working practises*	ALL
ADI HUM 5.1.8	Describe the impact on an ATCO following an occurrence/incident.	2	*Optional content: reporting, SMS, investigation, CISM*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 5.2 - Violation of rules				
ADI HUM 5.2.1	Explain the causes and dangers of violation of rules becoming accepted as a practice.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 6 - COLLABORATIVE WORK

Subtopic HUM 6.1 - Communication				
ADI HUM 6.1.1	Use communication effectively in ATC.	3		ALL
ADI HUM 6.1.2	Analyse examples of pilot and controller communication for effectiveness.	4		ALL
Subtopic HUM 6.2 - Collaborative work within the same area of responsibility				
ADI HUM 6.2.1	List communication means between controllers in charge of the same area of responsibility (sector or tower).	1	*Optional content: electronic, written, verbal and non-verbal communication*	ALL
ADI HUM 6.2.2	Explain consequences of the use of communication means on effectiveness.	2	*Optional content: strips legibility and encoding, labels designation, feedback*	ALL
ADI HUM 6.2.3	List possible actions to provide a safe position handover.	1	*Optional content: rigour, preparation, overlap time*	ALL
ADI HUM 6.2.4	Explain consequences of a missed position handover process.	2		ALL

Subtopic HUM 6.3 - Collaborative work between different areas of responsibility				
ADI HUM 6.3.1	List factors and means for an effective coordination between sectors and/or tower positions.	1	*Optional content: other sectors constraints, electronic coordination tools*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 6.4 - Controller/pilot cooperation				
ADI HUM 6.4.1	Describe parameters affecting controller/pilot cooperation.	2	*Optional content: workload, mutual knowledge, controller vs pilot mental picture*	ALL

SUBJECT 8: EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall integrate knowledge and understanding of the basic working principles of equipment and systems and comply with the equipment and system degradation procedures in the provision of ATS.

TOPIC EQPS 1 - VOICE COMMUNICATIONS

Subtopic EQPS 1.1 - Radio communications

ADI EQPS 1.1.1	Operate two-way communication equipment.	3	Transmit/receive switches, procedures *Optional content: frequency selection, standby equipment*	ALL
ADI EQPS 1.1.2	Identify indications of operational status of radio equipment.	3	*Optional content: indicator lights, serviceability displays, selector/frequency displays*	ALL

Subtopic EQPS 1.2 - Other voice communications

ADI EQPS 1.2.1	Operate landline communications.	3	*Optional content: telephone, interphone and intercom equipment*	ALL

TOPIC EQPS 2 - AUTOMATION IN ATS

Subtopic EQPS 2.1 - Aeronautical fixed telecommunication network (AFTN)

ADI EQPS 2.1.1	Decode AFTN messages.	3	*Optional content: movement and control messages, NOTAM, SNOWTAM, BIRDTAM, etc.*	ALL

Subtopic EQPS 2.2 - Automatic data interchange

ADI EQPS 2.2.1	Use automatic data transfer equipment where available.	3	*Optional content: sequencing systems, automated information and coordination, OLDI*	ADV ADI APS ACS
ADI EQPS 2.2.2	Explain operational application of CPDLC for departure clearance (DCL) delivery and D-ATIS.	2	ICAO Doc 9694	ADV ADI

TOPIC EQPS 3 - CONTROLLER WORKING POSITION

Subtopic EQPS 3.1 - Operation and monitoring of equipment				
ADI EQPS 3.1.1	Monitor the technical integrity of the controller working position.	3	Notification procedures, responsibilities	ALL
ADI EQPS 3.1.2	Operate the equipment of the controller working position.	3	*Optional content: situation displays, flight progress board, flight data display, radio, telephone, maps and charts, strip-printer, clock, information systems, UDF/VDF*	ALL
ADI EQPS 3.1.3	Operate available equipment in abnormal and emergency situations.	3		ALL
Subtopic EQPS 3.2 - Situation displays and information systems				
ADI EQPS 3.2.1	Use situation displays.	3		ALL
ADI EQPS 3.2.2	Check availability of information material.	3		ALL
ADI EQPS 3.2.3	Obtain information from equipment.	3	*Optional content: information from wind direction indicator*	ADV ADI
ADI EQPS 3.2.4	Take account of anti-incursion equipment.	2		ADI
ADI EQPS 3.2.5	Explain the use of ASMGCS.	2		ADI
Subtopic EQPS 3.3 - Flight data systems				
ADI EQPS 3.3.1	Use the flight data information at controller working position.	3		ALL

TOPIC EQPS 4 - FUTURE EQUIPMENT

Subtopic EQPS 4.1 - New developments				
ADI EQPS 4.1.1	Recognise future developments.	1	New advanced systems	ALL

TOPIC EQPS 5 - EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS LIMITATIONS AND DEGRADATION

Subtopic EQPS 5.1 - Reaction to limitations				
ADI EQPS 5.1.1	Take account of the limitations of equipment and systems.	2		ALL
ADI EQPS 5.1.2	Respond to technical deficiencies of the operational position.	3	Notification procedures, responsibilities	ALL
Subtopic EQPS 5.2 - Communication equipment degradation				
ADI EQPS 5.2.1	Identify that communication equipment has degraded.	3	*Optional content: ground-air, ground-ground and landline communications*	ADV ADI
ADI EQPS 5.2.2	Integrate contingency procedures in the event of communication equipment degradation.	4	*Optional content: total or partial degradation of ground-air, ground-ground and landline communications; alternative methods of transferring data*	ADV ADI
Subtopic EQPS 5.3 - Navigational equipment degradation				
ADI EQPS 5.3.1	Identify when a navigational equipment failure will affect operational ability.	3	*Optional content: VOR, navigational aids*	ALL
ADI EQPS 5.3.2	Apply contingency procedures in the event of a navigational equipment degradation.	3	*Optional content: vertical separation, information to aircraft, navigational assistance, seeking assistance from adjacent units*	ADI APP ACP APS ACS

SUBJECT 9: PROFESSIONAL ENVIRONMENT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall identify the need for close cooperation with other parties concerning ATM operations and appreciate aspects of environmental protection.

TOPIC PEN 1 - FAMILIARISATION

Subtopic PEN 1.1 - Study visit to aerodrome				
ADI PEN 1.1.1	Appreciate the functions and provision of an operational aerodrome control service.	3	Study visit to TWR	ADV ADI

TOPIC PEN 2 - AIRSPACE USERS

Subtopic PEN 2.1 - Contributors to civil ATS operations				
ADI PEN 2.1.1	Characterise civil ATS activities at aerodrome.	2	Study visit to TWR *Optional content: familiarisation visits to APP, ACC, AIS, RCC*	ADV ADI
ADI PEN 2.1.2	Characterise other parties interfacing with ATS operations.	2	*Optional content: familiarisation visits to engineering services, fire and emergency services, airline operations offices*	ALL
Subtopic PEN 2.2 - Contributors to military ATS operations				
ADI PEN 2.2.1	Characterise military ATS activities.	2	*Optional content: familiarisation visits to TWR, APP, ACC, AIS, RCC, Air Defence Units*	ALL

TOPIC PEN 3 - CUSTOMER RELATIONS

Subtopic PEN 3.1 - Provision of services and user requirements				
ADI PEN 3.1.1	Identify the role of ATC as a service provider.	3		ALL
ADI PEN 3.1.2	Appreciate ATS users requirements.	3		ALL

TOPIC PEN 4 - ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Subtopic PEN 4.1 - Environmental protection				
ADI PEN 4.1.1	Describe the environmental constraints on aerodrome operations.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 303 - Operational opportunities to minimise fuel use and reduce emissions*	ADV ADI APP APS
ADI PEN 4.1.2	Explain the use of Collaborative Environmental Management (CEM) process at airports.	2		ADV ADI APP APS
ADI PEN 4.1.3	Appreciate the mitigation techniques used at aerodromes to minimise aviation's impact on the environment.	3	*Optional content: noise abatement procedures, flight efficiency*	ADV ADI

SUBJECT 10: ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall develop professional attitudes to manage traffic in abnormal and emergency situations.

TOPIC ABES 1 - ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS (ABES)

Subtopic ABES 1.1 - Overview of ABES				
ADI ABES 1.1.1	List common abnormal and emergency situations.	1	*Optional content: EATM Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations, ambulance flights, ground based safety nets alerts, airframe failure, unreliable instruments, runway incursion*	ALL
ADI ABES 1.1.2	Identify potential or actual abnormal and emergency situations.	3		ALL
ADI ABES 1.1.3	Take into account the procedures for given abnormal and emergency situations.	2	Bird strike, aborted take-off *Optional content: ICAO Doc 4444*	ADV ADI
ADI ABES 1.1.4	Take into account that procedures do not exist for all abnormal and emergency situations.	2	*Optional content: real life examples*	ALL
ADI ABES 1.1.5	Consider how the evolution of a situation may have an impact on safety.	2	*Optional content: separation, information, coordination*	ALL

TOPIC ABES 2 - SKILLS IMPROVEMENT

Subtopic ABES 2.1 - Communication effectiveness				
ADI ABES 2.1.1	Ensure effective communication in all circumstances including the case where standard phraseology is not applicable.	4	Phraseology, vocabulary, readback, silence instruction	ALL
ADI ABES 2.1.2	Apply change of radiotelephony call sign.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL

Subtopic ABES 2.2 - Avoidance of mental overload				
ADI ABES 2.2.1	Describe actions to keep control of the situation.	2	*Optional content: sector splitting, holding, flow management, task delegation*	ALL
ADI ABES 2.2.2	Organise priority of actions.	4		ALL
ADI ABES 2.2.3	Ensure effective circulation of information.	4	*Optional content: between executive and planner/coordinator, with the supervisor, between sectors, between ACC, APP and TWR , with ground staff, etc.*	ALL
ADI ABES 2.2.4	Consider asking for help.	2		ALL
Subtopic ABES 2.3 - Air / ground cooperation				
ADI ABES 2.3.1	Collect appropriate information relevant to the situation.	3		ALL
ADI ABES 2.3.2	Assist the pilot.	3	Pilot workload *Optional content: instructions, information, support, human factors, etc.*	ALL

TOPIC ABES 3 - PROCEDURES FOR ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS

Subtopic ABES 3.1 - Application of procedures for ABES

ADI ABES 3.1.1	Apply the procedures for given abnormal and emergency situations.	3	*Optional content: EATM Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations, ambulance flights, ground based safety nets alerts, airframe failure*	ALL

Subtopic ABES 3.2 - Radio failure

ADI ABES 3.2.1	Describe the procedures followed by a pilot when he/she experiences complete or partial radio failure.	2	ICAO Doc 7030 *Optional content: military procedures*	ALL
ADI ABES 3.2.2	Apply the procedures to be followed when a pilot experiences complete or partial radio failure.	3	*Optional content: prolonged loss of communication*	ALL

Subtopic ABES 3.3 - Unlawful interference and aircraft bomb threat

ADI ABES 3.3.1	Apply ATC procedures associated with unlawful interference and aircraft bomb threat.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL

Subtopic ABES 3.4 - Strayed or unidentified aircraft

ADI ABES 3.4.1	Apply the procedures in the case of strayed aircraft.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: inside controlled airspace, outside controlled airspace*	ALL
ADI ABES 3.4.2	Apply the procedures in the case of unidentified aircraft.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
ADI ABES 3.4.3	Provide navigational assistance to aircraft.	4	*Optional content: diverted aircraft, aircraft lost or unsure of position, information derived locally or from radar service or from other pilots, nearest most suitable aerodrome, track, heading, distance, aerodrome information, any other relevant navigational assistance, ICAO Doc 4444, etc.*	ADV ADI

Subtopic ABES 3.5 - Runway incursion

ADI ABES 3.5.1	Apply ATC procedures associated with runway incursion.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ADV ADI

SUBJECT 11: AERODROMES

The subject objective is:

Learners shall recognise and understand the design and layout of aerodromes.

TOPIC AGA 1 - AERODROME DATA, LAYOUT AND COORDINATION

Subtopic AGA 1.1 - Definitions

ADI AGA 1.1.1	Define aerodrome data.	1	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14 *Optional content: aerodrome elevation, reference point, apron, movement area, manoeuvring area, hot spot*	ADV ADI APP APS

Subtopic AGA 1.2 - Coordination

ADI AGA 1.2.1	Identify the information that has to be passed between Air Traffic Services (ATS) and the airport authority.	3	Airport conditions, fire/rescue category, condition of ground equipment and NAVAIDs, AIRAC, Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM Airport conditions, Fire/rescue category, Condition of ground equipment and NAVAIDs, AIRAC, ICAO Annex 14	APP APS ADV ADI

TOPIC AGA 2 - MOVEMENT AREA

Subtopic AGA 2.1 - Movement area

ADI AGA 2.1.1	Describe movement area.	2	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14	ADV ADI APP APS
ADI AGA 2.1.2	Describe the marking of obstacles and unusable or unserviceable areas.	2	Flags, signs on pavement, lights	ADV ADI APP APS
ADI AGA 2.1.3	Identify the information on conditions of the movement area that have to be passed to aircraft.	3	Essential information on aerodrome conditions	ADV ADI APP APS

Subtopic AGA 2.2 - Manoeuvring area				
ADI AGA 2.2.1	Describe manoeuvring area.	2	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14	ADV ADI APP APS
ADI AGA 2.2.2	Describe taxiway.	2		ADV ADI APP APS
ADI AGA 2.2.3	Describe the daylight marking on taxiways.	2		ADV ADI APP APS
ADI AGA 2.2.4	Describe taxiway lighting.	2		ADV ADI APP APS
Subtopic AGA 2.3 - Runways				
ADI AGA 2.3.1	Describe runway.	2	Runway, runway surface, runway strip, shoulder, runway end safety areas, clearways, stopways	ADV ADI APP APS
ADI AGA 2.3.2	Describe instrument runway.	2	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14	ADI APP APS
ADI AGA 2.3.3	Describe non-instrument runway.	2	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14	*ADV* ADI APP APS
ADI AGA 2.3.4	Explain declared distances.	2	TORA, TODA, ASDA, LDA	*ADV* ADI APP APS
ADI AGA 2.3.5	Explain the differences between ACN and PCN.	2	Strength of pavements	*ADV* ADI APP APS
ADI AGA 2.3.6	Describe the daylight markings on runways.	2	*Optional content: runway designator, centre line, threshold, aiming point, fixed distance, touchdown zone, side strip, colour*	*ADV* ADI APP APS

Subtopic AGA 2.3 - Runways				
ADI AGA 2.3.7	Describe runway lights.	2	*Optional content: colour, centre line, intensity, edge, touchdown zone, threshold, barettes*	*ADV* ADI APP APS
ADI AGA 2.3.8	Explain the functions of visual landing aids.	2	*Optional content: AVASI, VASI, PAPI*	*ADV* ADI APP APS
ADI AGA 2.3.9	Describe the approach lighting systems.	2	Centre line, cross bars, stroboscopic lights, colours, intensity and brightness	*ADV* ADI APP APS
ADI AGA 2.3.10	Characterise the effect of water/ice on runways.	2		*ADV* ADI APP APS
ADI AGA 2.3.11	Explain braking action.	2	Braking action coefficient	*ADV* ADI APP APS
ADI AGA 2.3.12	Explain the effect of runway visual range on aerodrome operation.	2		*ADV* ADI APP APS

TOPIC AGA 3 - OBSTACLES

Subtopic AGA 3.1 - Obstacle-free airspace around aerodromes				
ADI AGA 3.1.1	Explain the necessity for establishing and maintaining an obstacle-free airspace around aerodromes.	2		ADV ADI APP APS

TOPIC AGA 4 - MISCELLANEOUS EQUIPMENT

Subtopic AGA 4.1 - Location				
ADI AGA 4.1.1	Explain the location of different aerodrome ground equipment.	2	*Optional content: LLZ, GP, VDF, radio communication or ATS surveillance systems sensors, stopbars, AVASI, VASI, PAPI*	ADV ADI APP APS

Page intentionally left blank

www.eurocontrol.int

Network Manager
nominated by
the European Commission

EUROCONTROL

EUROCONTROL Specification

EUROCONTROL Specifications for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training

Annex 4: Approach Control Procedural Rating - APP

Edition: 2.0
Edition date: 02/04/2015
Reference Number: EUROCONTROL-SPEC-157

EUROPEAN ORGANISATION
FOR THE SAFETY OF AIR NAVIGATION

EUROCONTROL

EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training

Annex 4 Approach Control Procedural Rating APP

Edition Number	:	2.0
Edition Date	:	02/04/2015
Status	:	Released Issue
Intended for	:	NMD Stakeholders

NETWORK MANAGER DIRECTORATE

Page intentionally left blank

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Annex 4 of the EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training V2.0 details the training objectives for the **Rating ATC training: Approach Control Procedural**.

For training organisations providing ATCO training to meet the requirements laid down in the **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340 laying down technical requirements and administrative procedures relating to air traffic controllers' licences and certificates**, and the acceptable means of compliance (AMCs) associated with the regulation, this syllabus does not change any of the content in the regulation, but rather provides a document that combines the relevant elements into a familiar user format. For European organisations not required to comply with EU legislation, it provides an **Approach Control Procedural Rating training syllab**us that retains references to ICAO documentation.

Rating training is defined ***as theoretical and practical training designed to impart knowledge and practical skills related to a specific rating and, if applicable, rating endorsement.***

The composition and topics were chosen based on the **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340** Annex I — Rating training (Reference: Annex I — Part ATCO Subpart D, Section 2, ATCO.D.010(a)(2)(iii)) and ICAO Annex 1 requirements for an Air Traffic Control licence. The structure of the syllabus reflects a logical grouping of objectives into coherent subjects.

The order of subjects and objectives is neither intended to convey a pedagogical sequence nor to indicate a relative level of importance. No recommendation is made in this area. When teaching the objectives, it is envisaged that different training methodologies will be used.

Prior to developing or updating the **APP Rating training course,** training providers must be familiar with the information contained in the EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training V2.0, particularly Section 6 (How to use this document) which contains, amongst other items, the fundamental principles that are applied to the Specification.

Page intentionally left blank

Contents

Page intentionally left blank

SUBJECT 1: INTRODUCTION TO THE COURSE

The subject objective is:

Learners shall know and understand the training programme that they will follow and learn how to obtain the appropriate information.

TOPIC INTR 1 - COURSE MANAGEMENT

Subtopic INTR 1.1 - Course introduction				
APP INTR 1.1.1	Explain the aims and main objectives of the course.	2		ALL
Subtopic INTR 1.2 - Course administration				
APP INTR 1.2.1	State course administration.	1		ALL
Subtopic INTR 1.3 - Study material and training documentation				
APP INTR 1.3.1	Use appropriate documentation and their sources for course studies.	3	*Optional content: training documentation, library, CBT library, web, learning management server*	ALL
APP INTR 1.3.2	Integrate appropriate information into course studies.	4	Training documentation *Optional content: supplementary information, library*	ALL

TOPIC INTR 2 - INTRODUCTION TO THE ATC TRAINING COURSE

Subtopic INTR 2.1 - Course content and organisation				
APP INTR 2.1.1	State the different training methods applied in the course.	1	Theoretical training, practical training, self-study, types of training events	ALL
APP INTR 2.1.2	State the subjects of the course and their purpose.	1		ALL
APP INTR 2.1.3	Describe the organisation of theoretical training.	2	*Optional content: course programme*	ALL
APP INTR 2.1.4	Describe the organisation of practical training.	2	*Optional content: PTP, simulation, briefing, debriefing, course programme*	ALL

Subtopic INTR 2.2 - Training ethos				
APP INTR 2.2.1	Recognise the feedback mechanisms available.	1	Training progress, assessment, briefing, debriefing, learner/instructor feedback, instructor/instructor feedback	ALL
Subtopic INTR 2.3 - Assessment process				
APP INTR 2.3.1	Describe the assessment process.	2		ALL

SUBJECT 2: AVIATION LAW

The subject objective is:

Learners shall know, understand and apply the Rules of the Air and the Regulations regarding reporting, airspace and appreciate the Licensing and Competence principles.

TOPIC LAW 1 - ATCO LICENSING/CERTIFICATE OF COMPETENCE

Subtopic LAW 1.1 - Privileges and conditions

APP LAW 1.1.1	Appreciate the conditions which shall be met to issue an Approach Control Procedural rating	3	Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on ATCO Licensing ICAO Annex 1 *Optional content: National documents*	APP
APP LAW 1.1.2	Explain how to maintain and update professional knowledge and skills to retain competence in the operational environment.	2		ALL
APP LAW 1.1.3	Explain the conditions for suspension/revocation of ATCO licence.	2	Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on ATCO Licensing ICAO Annex 1	ALL

TOPIC LAW 2 - RULES AND REGULATIONS

Subtopic LAW 2.1 - Reports

APP LAW 2.1.1	List the standard forms for reports.	1	Air traffic incident report *Optional content: routine air reports, breach of regulations, watch/log book, records*	ALL
APP LAW 2.1.2	Describe the functions of, and processes for, reporting.	2	Reporting culture, air traffic incident report *Optional content: breach of regulations, watch/log book, records, voluntary reporting, ESARR 2*	ALL
APP LAW 2.1.3	Use forms for reporting.	3	Regulation (EU) No 376/2014, air traffic incident reporting form(s) ICAO Doc 4444 Appendix 4, air traffic incident reporting form(s) *Optional content: routine air reports, breach of regulations, watch/log book, records*	ALL

Subtopic LAW 2.2 - Airspace				
APP LAW 2.2.1	Appreciate classes and structure of airspace and their relevance to Approach Control Procedural rating operations.	3		APP
APP LAW 2.2.2	Provide planning, coordination and control actions appropriate to the airspace classification and structure.	4	*Optional content: Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 2, ICAO Annex 11, international requirements, civil requirements, military requirements, areas of responsibility, sectorization, national requirements*	ALL
APP LAW 2.2.3	Appreciate responsibility for terrain clearance.	3		ALL

TOPIC LAW 3 - ATC SAFETY MANAGEMENT

Subtopic LAW 3.1 - Feedback process				
APP LAW 3.1.1	State the importance of controller contribution to the feedback process.	1	*Optional content: voluntary reporting*	ALL
APP LAW 3.1.2	Describe how reported occurrences are analysed.	2	*Optional content: ESARR 2, local procedures*	ALL
APP LAW 3.1.3	Name the means used to disseminate recommendations.	1	*Optional content: safety letters, safety boards web pages*	ALL
APP LAW 3.1.4	Appreciate the 'Just Culture' concept.	3	Benefits, prerequisites, constraints *Optional content: EAM 2 GUI 6, GAIN Report*	ALL
Subtopic LAW 3.2 - Safety Investigation				
APP LAW 3.2.1	Describe role and mission of Safety Investigation in the improvement of safety.	2		ALL
APP LAW 3.2.2	Define working methods of Safety Investigation.	1		ALL

SUBJECT 3: AIR TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall manage air traffic to ensure safe, orderly and expeditious services.

TOPIC ATM 1 - PROVISION OF SERVICES

Subtopic ATM 1.1 - Air traffic control (ATC) service				
APP ATM 1.1.1	Appreciate own area of responsibility.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 1.1.2	Provide approach control service.	4	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 7030, ICAO Doc 4444, operation manuals ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 7030, ICAO Doc 4444, operation manuals	APP APS
Subtopic ATM 1.2 - Flight information service (FIS)				
APP ATM 1.2.1	Provide FIS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	*ALL*
APP ATM 1.2.2	Issue appropriate information concerning the location of conflicting traffic.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, traffic information, essential traffic information	APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 1.2.3	Appreciate the use of ATIS for the provision of flight information service by approach controller.	3		APP *APS*
Subtopic ATM 1.3 - Alerting service (ALRS)				
APP ATM 1.3.1	Provide ALRS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
APP ATM 1.3.2	Respond to distress and urgency messages and signals.	3	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 10, ICAO Doc 4444 ICAO Annex 10, ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: EUROCONTROL Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations*	ALL

Subtopic ATM 1.4 - ATS system capacity and air traffic flow management				
APP ATM 1.4.1	Appreciate principles of ATS system capacity and air traffic flow management.	3	*Optional content: EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual, FABs, FUA, free flight, etc.*	APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 1.4.2	Apply flow management procedures in the provision of ATC.	3	*Optional content: EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual*	APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 1.4.3	Organise traffic flows and patterns to take account of airspace boundaries.	4	*Optional content: civil and military, controlled, uncontrolled, advisory, restricted, danger, prohibited, special rules, sector boundaries, national boundaries, FIR boundaries, delegated airspace, transfer of control, transfer of communications, en-route, off-route*	APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 1.4.4	Organise traffic flows and patterns to take account of areas of responsibility.	4	*Optional content: EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual*	APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 1.4.5	Inform supervisor of situation.	3	*Optional content: abnormal situations, decrease in sector capacity, limitations on systems and equipment, changes in workload/capacity, unusual meteorological conditions, relevant information like: reported ground-based incidents, forest fire, smoke, oil pollution*	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 1.5 - Airspace management (ASM)				
APP ATM 1.5.1	Appreciate the principles and means of ASM.	3	Regulation (EC) No 551/2004, Regulation (EC) 2150/2005, Regulation (EC) No 730/2006 EUROCONTROL ASM HBK - Airspace Management Handbook for the application of FUA *Optional content: FABs, EUROCONTROL Specification for the application of FUA, TSAs, CDRs, CBAs*	APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 1.5.2	Organise traffic to take account of ASM.	4	*Optional content: CDR, TSA, TRA, CBA, real-time activation, deactivation or reallocation of airspace*	APP *ACP*

TOPIC ATM 2 - COMMUNICATION

Subtopic ATM 2.1 - Effective communication				
APP ATM 2.1.1	Use approved phraseology.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: ICAO Doc 9432 RTF manual, standard words and phrases as contained in ICAO Annex 10 Vol. 2*	ALL
APP ATM 2.1.2	Ensure effective communication.	4	Communication techniques, readback/verification of readback	ALL

TOPIC ATM 3 - ATC CLEARANCES AND ATC INSTRUCTIONS

Subtopic ATM 3.1 - ATC clearances				
APP ATM 3.1.1	Issue appropriate ATC clearances.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
APP ATM 3.1.2	Integrate appropriate ATC clearances in control service.	4		ALL
APP ATM 3.1.3	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL
Subtopic ATM 3.2 - ATC instructions				
APP ATM 3.2.1	Issue appropriate ATC instructions.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
APP ATM 3.2.2	Integrate appropriate ATC instructions in control service.	4		ALL
APP ATM 3.2.3	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL

TOPIC ATM 4 - COORDINATION

Subtopic ATM 4.1 - Necessity for coordination				
APP ATM 4.1.1	Identify the need for coordination.	3		ALL
Subtopic ATM 4.2 - Tools and methods for coordination				
APP ATM 4.2.1	Use the available tools for coordination.	3	*Optional content: electronic transfer of flight data, telephone, interphone, intercom, direct speech, radiotelephone (RTF), local agreements, automated system coordination*	ALL
Subtopic ATM 4.3 - Coordination procedures				
APP ATM 4.3.1	Initiate appropriate coordination.	3	Delegation/transfer of responsibility for air-ground communications and separation, transfer of control, etc. ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: release point*	ALL
APP ATM 4.3.2	Analyse effect of coordination requested by an adjacent position/unit.	4	*Optional content: delegation/transfer of responsibility for air-ground communications and separation, release point, transfer of control, etc.*	ALL
APP ATM 4.3.3	Select, after negotiation, an appropriate course of action.	5		ALL
APP ATM 4.3.4	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL
APP ATM 4.3.5	Coordinate in the provision of FIS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
APP ATM 4.3.6	Coordinate in the provision of ALRS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL

TOPIC ATM 5 - ALTIMETRY AND LEVEL ALLOCATION

Subtopic ATM 5.1 - Altimetry				
APP ATM 5.1.1	Allocate levels according to altimetry data.	4	ICAO Doc 8168, ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
APP ATM 5.1.2	Ensure separation according to altimetry data.	4	*Optional content: transition level, transition altitude, transition layer, height, flight level, altitude, vertical distance to airspace boundaries*	ALL
Subtopic ATM 5.2 - Terrain clearance				
APP ATM 5.2.1	Provide planning, coordination and control actions appropriate to the rules for minimum safe levels and terrain clearance.	4	*Optional content: terrain clearance dimensions, minimum safe altitudes, transition level, minimum flight level, minimum sector altitude*	APP ACP

TOPIC ATM 6 - SEPARATIONS

Subtopic ATM 6.1 - Vertical separation				
APP ATM 6.1.1	Provide standard vertical separation.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030, level allocation, during climb/descent, rate of climb/descent, holding pattern	APP APS
APP ATM 6.1.2	Provide increased vertical separation.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030 *Optional content: level allocation, during climb/descent, rate of climb/descent*	APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 6.1.3	Appreciate the application of vertical emergency separation.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 6.2 - Horizontal separation				
APP ATM 6.2.1	Provide longitudinal separation.	4	Based on time, based on distance (DME and/or GNSS, RNAV)	APP
APP ATM 6.2.2	Provide lateral separation.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030, holding	APP ACP
APP ATM 6.2.3	Provide track separation.	4		ACP APP
APP ATM 6.2.4	Provide geographical separation.	4	Visual, using navigation aids, area navigation	ACP APP

Subtopic ATM 6.3 - Delegation of separation				
APP ATM 6.3.1	Delegate separation to pilots in the case of aircraft executing successive visual approaches.	4		APP APS
APP ATM 6.3.2	Appreciate the conditions which must be met when delegating separation to pilots to fly maintaining own separation while in VMC.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	APP APS
TOPIC ATM 7 - AIRBORNE COLLISION AVOIDANCE SYSTEMS AND GROUND-BASED SAFETY NETS				
Subtopic ATM 7.1 - Airborne collision avoidance systems				
APP ATM 7.1.1	Differentiate between ACAS advisory thresholds and separation standards applicable in the approach control environment.	2	ICAO Doc 9863 *Optional content: EUROCONTROL TCAS web page*	APP APS
APP ATM 7.1.2	Describe the controller responsibility during and following an ACAS RA reported by pilot.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
APP ATM 7.1.3	Respond to pilot notification of actions based on airborne systems warnings.	3	ACAS, TAWS *Optional content: EUROCONTROL ACAS web page*	ALL
TOPIC ATM 8 - DATA DISPLAY				
Subtopic ATM 8.1 - Data management				
APP ATM 8.1.1	Update the data display to accurately reflect the traffic situation.	3	*Optional content: information displayed, strip marking procedures, electronic information data displays, actions based on traffic display information, calculation of EETs*	ALL
APP ATM 8.1.2	Analyse pertinent data on data displays.	4		ALL
APP ATM 8.1.3	Organise pertinent data on data displays.	4		ALL
APP ATM 8.1.4	Obtain flight plan information.	3	CPL, FPL, supplementary information *Optional content: RPL, AFIL, etc.*	ALL
APP ATM 8.1.5	Use flight plan information.	3		ALL

TOPIC ATM 9 - OPERATIONAL ENVIRONMENT (SIMULATED)

Subtopic ATM 9.1 - Integrity of the operational environment				
APP ATM 9.1.1	Obtain information concerning the operational environment.	3	*Optional content: briefing, notices, local orders, verification of information*	ALL
APP ATM 9.1.2	Ensure the integrity of the operational environment.	4	*Optional content: integrity of displays, verification of the information provided by displays, etc.*	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 9.2 - Verification of the currency of operational procedures				
APP ATM 9.2.1	Check all relevant documentation before managing traffic.	3	*Optional content: briefing, LOAs, NOTAM, AICs*	ALL
APP ATM 9.2.2	Manage traffic in accordance with procedural changes.	4		APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 9.3 - Handover-takeover				
APP ATM 9.3.1	Transfer information to the relieving controller.	3		ALL
APP ATM 9.3.2	Obtain information from the controller handing over.	3		ALL

TOPIC ATM 10 - PROVISION OF CONTROL SERVICE

Subtopic ATM 10.1 - Responsibility and processing of information				
APP ATM 10.1.1	Describe the division of responsibility between air traffic control units.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	*ALL*
APP ATM 10.1.2	Describe the responsibility in regard to military traffic.	2	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: ICAO Doc 9554*	*ALL*
APP ATM 10.1.3	Describe the responsibility in regard to unmanned free balloons.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 10.1.4	Obtain operational information.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, local operation manuals	APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic ATM 10.1 - Responsibility and processing of information				
APP ATM 10.1.5	Interpret operational information.	5		APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 10.1.6	Organise forwarding of operational information.	4	*Optional content: including the use of backup procedures*	APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 10.1.7	Integrate operational information into control decisions.	4		APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 10.1.8	Appreciate the influence of operational requirements.	3	*Optional content: military flying, calibration flights, aerial photography*	*ALL*
Subtopic ATM 10.2 - Approach control				
APP ATM 10.2.1	Explain the responsibility for the provision of an approach procedural control service.	2	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Annex 11, local operation manuals	APP
APP ATM 10.2.2	Provide planning, coordination and control actions appropriate to the VFR, SVFR and IFR in VMC and IMC.	4	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 4444 ICAO Annex 2, ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 4444	APP *APS*
Subtopic ATM 10.3 - Traffic management process				
APP ATM 10.3.1	Ensure that situational awareness is maintained.	4	Information gathering, traffic projection	APP ACP
APP ATM 10.3.2	Detect conflicts in time for appropriate resolution.	4		ALL
APP ATM 10.3.3	Identify potential solutions to achieve a safe and effective traffic flow.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 10.3.4	Evaluate possible outcomes of different planning and control actions.	5		APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 10.3.5	Select an appropriate plan in time to achieve safe and effective traffic flow.	5		APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 10.3.6	Ensure an adequate priority of actions.	4		*ALL*

Subtopic ATM 10.3 - Traffic management process				
APP ATM 10.3.7	Execute selected plan in a timely manner.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 10.3.8	Ensure a safe and efficient outcome is achieved.	4	Traffic monitoring, adaptability and follow up	ALL
Subtopic ATM 10.4 - Handling traffic				
APP ATM 10.4.1	Manage arrivals, departures and overflights.	4		APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 10.4.2	Balance the workload against personal capacity.	5	*Optional content: re-routing, re-planning, prioritising solutions, denying requests, delegating responsibility for separation*	APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 10.4.3	Manage traffic on different types of approaches.	4	Precision, non-precision, visual	APP *APS*
APP ATM 10.4.4	Initiate missed approach.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	APP *APS*
APP ATM 10.4.5	Integrate aircraft on missed approach into the traffic situation.	4		APP *APS*

TOPIC ATM 11 - HOLDING

Subtopic ATM 11.1 - General holding procedures				
APP ATM 11.1.1	Apply holding procedures.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, holding instructions, allocation of holding levels, onward clearance times	APP ACP APS ACS
APP ATM 11.1.2	Appreciate the factors affecting holding patterns.	3	Effect of speed, effect of level used, effect of navigation aid in use, turbulence, aircraft type	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 11.2 - Approaching aircraft				
APP ATM 11.2.1	Calculate Expected Approach Times (EATs) and Expected Onward Clearance times.	3		APP APS
APP ATM 11.2.2	Organise the traffic landing sequence in a holding pattern.	4	*Optional content: company preference, aircraft performance, aircraft approach capability, ILS categories, flow control management*	APP APS

SUBJECT 4: METEOROLOGY

The subject objective is:

Learners shall acquire, decode and make proper use of meteorological information relevant to the provision of ATS.

TOPIC MET 1 - METEOROLOGICAL PHENOMENA

Subtopic MET 1.1 - Meteorological phenomena				
APP MET 1.1.1	Appreciate the impact of adverse weather.	3	Thunderstorms, icing, clear air turbulence (CAT), turbulence, microburst, wind shear, severe mountain waves, line squalls, volcanic ash	APP APS
APP MET 1.1.2	Integrate data about meteorological phenomena into provision of ATS.	4	Clearances, instructions and transmitted information *Optional content: relevant meteorological phenomena*	*ALL*
APP MET 1.1.3	Use techniques to avoid adverse weather when necessary/possible.	3	Re-routing, level change, etc.	APP ACP APS ACS

TOPIC MET 2 - SOURCES OF METEOROLOGICAL DATA

Subtopic MET 2.1 - Sources of meteorological information				
APP MET 2.1.1	Obtain meteorological information	3	METAR, TAF, SIGMET, AIRMET *Optional content: AIREP/AIREP Special*	APP ACP APS ACS
APP MET 2.1.2	Relay meteorological information.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: flight information centre, adjacent ATS unit*	*ALL*

SUBJECT 5: NAVIGATION

The subject objective is:

Learners shall analyse all navigational aspects in order to organise the traffic.

TOPIC NAV 1 - MAPS AND AERONAUTICAL CHARTS

Subtopic NAV 1.1 - Maps and charts

APP NAV 1.1.1	Decode symbols and information displayed on aeronautical maps and charts.	3	Instrument approach charts, SID charts, aerodrome charts, visual approach charts *Optional content: military maps and charts*	ADI APP APS
APP NAV 1.1.2	Use relevant maps and charts.	3		APP *ACP* APS *ACS*

TOPIC NAV 2 - INSTRUMENT NAVIGATION

Subtopic NAV 2.1 - Navigational systems

APP NAV 2.1.1	Manage traffic in case of change in the operational status of navigational systems.	4	*Optional content: limitations, status of ground-based and satellite-based systems*	APP ACP APS ACS
APP NAV 2.1.2	Appreciate the effect of precision, limitations and change of the operational status of navigational systems.	3	*Optional content: limitations, status, degraded procedures*	*ALL*

Subtopic NAV 2.2 - Stabilised approach

APP NAV 2.2.1	Describe the concept of stabilised approach.	2	ICAO Doc 8168 *Optional content: SKYbrary, Regulation (EC) No 1899/2006*	ADV ADI APP APS
APP NAV 2.2.2	Appreciate the effect of late change of runway-in-use or type of approach for landing aircraft.	3		APP APS
APP NAV 2.2.3	Appreciate controller actions that may contribute to unstabilised approach.	3	Delayed descent	APP

Subtopic NAV 2.3 - Instrument departures and arrivals				
APP NAV 2.3.1	Characterise SIDs.	2		ADI APP APS
APP NAV 2.3.2	Describe the types and phases of instrument approach procedures.	2		APP APS
APP NAV 2.3.3	Describe the relevant minima applicable for a precision/ non-precision and visual approach.	2		ADI APP APS
Subtopic NAV 2.4 - Navigational assistance				
APP NAV 2.4.1	Evaluate the necessary information to be provided to pilots in need of navigational assistance.	5	*Optional content: nearest most suitable aerodrome, track, heading, distance, aerodrome information, any other navigational assistance relevant at the time*	APP *ACP* APS *ACS*
Subtopic NAV 2.5 - Satellite-based systems				
APP NAV 2.5.1	State the different applications of satellite-based systems relevant for approach operations.	1	*Optional content: NPA, APV-baro VNAV, APV, LPV, precision approach, ICAO Doc 8168 Vol.2*	APP APS
Subtopic NAV 2.6 - PBN applications				
APP NAV 2.6.1	State the navigation applications used in approach and terminal environments.	1	Approach-RNP APCH/ RNP AR APCH; Terminal-RNAV-1 (≈P-RNAV) *Optional content: A-RNP, EU PBN Implementing Rule, ICAO Doc 9613*	APP APS
APP NAV 2.6.2	Explain the principles and designation of navigation specifications in use.	2	*Optional content: performance, functionality, sensors, aircrew and controller requirements*	APP *ACP* APS *ACS*
APP NAV 2.6.3	State future PBN developments.	1	A-RNP, APV *Optional content: RNP 3D, RNP 4D*	***ADI*** **APP** ***ACP*** **APS** ***ACS***

SUBJECT 6: AIRCRAFT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall assess and integrate aircraft performance in the provision of ATS.

TOPIC ACFT 1 - AIRCRAFT INSTRUMENTS

Subtopic ACFT 1.1 - Aircraft instruments

APP ACFT 1.1.1	Integrate information from aircraft instruments provided by the pilot in the provision of ATS.	4		ALL
APP ACFT 1.1.2	Explain the operation of aircraft radio equipment.	2	*Optional content: radios (number of), emergency radios*	ALL

TOPIC ACFT 2 - AIRCRAFT CATEGORIES

Subtopic ACFT 2.1 - Wake turbulence

APP ACFT 2.1.1	Explain the wake turbulence effect and associated hazards to the succeeding aircraft.	2		ALL
APP ACFT 2.1.2	Appreciate the techniques used to prevent hazards associated with wake turbulence on succeeding aircraft.	3		ALL

Subtopic ACFT 2.2 - Application of ICAO approach categories

APP ACFT 2.2.1	Describe the use of ICAO approach categories.	2	ICAO Doc 8168	ADI APP APS
APP ACFT 2.2.2	Appreciate the effect of ICAO approach categories on the traffic organisation.	3		ADI APP APS

TOPIC ACFT 3 - FACTORS AFFECTING AIRCRAFT PERFORMANCE

Subtopic ACFT 3.1 - Climb factors				
APP ACFT 3.1.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during climb.	4	*Optional content: speed, mass, air density, cabin pressurisation, wind and temperature*	APP ACP APS ACS
APP ACFT 3.1.2	Appreciate the influence of factors affecting aircraft on take-off.	3	*Optional content: runway conditions, runway slope, aerodrome elevation, wind, temperature, aircraft configuration, airframe contamination and aircraft mass*	APP APS
Subtopic ACFT 3.2 - Cruise factors				
APP ACFT 3.2.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during cruise.	4	Level, cruising speed, wind, mass, cabin pressurisation	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic ACFT 3.3 - Descent and initial approach factors				
APP ACFT 3.3.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during descent.	4	*Optional content: wind, speed, rate of descent, aircraft configuration, cabin pressurisation*	APP APS
Subtopic ACFT 3.4 - Final approach and landing factors				
APP ACFT 3.4.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during final approach and landing.	4	*Optional content: wind, aircraft configuration, mass, meteorological conditions, runway conditions, runway slope, aerodrome elevation*	APP APS
Subtopic ACFT 3.5 - Economic factors				
APP ACFT 3.5.1	Integrate consideration of economic factors affecting aircraft.	4	*Optional content: routing, level, speed, rate of climb and rate of descent, approach profile*	APP APS
APP ACFT 3.5.2	Use continuous climb techniques where applicable.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
APP ACFT 3.5.3	Use direct routing where applicable.	3		APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic ACFT 3.6 - Environmental factors				
APP ACFT 3.6.1	Appreciate the performance restrictions due to environmental constraints.	3	*Optional content: fuel dumping, noise abatement procedures, minimum flight levels, bird hazard, continuous descent operations*	APP APS

TOPIC ACFT 4 - AIRCRAFT DATA

Subtopic ACFT 4.1 - Performance data				
APP ACFT 4.1.1	Integrate the average performance data of a representative sample of aircraft which will be encountered in the operational/working environment into the provision of a control service.	4	Performance data under a representative variety of circumstances	APP ACP APS ACS

SUBJECT 7: HUMAN FACTORS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall recognise the necessity to constantly extend their knowledge and analyse factors which affect personal and team performance.

TOPIC HUM 1 - PSYCHOLOGICAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 1.1 - Cognitive

APP HUM 1.1.1	Describe the human information processing model.	2	Attention, perception, memory, situational awareness, decision making, response	ALL
APP HUM 1.1.2	Describe the factors which influence human information processing.	2	Confidence, stress, learning, knowledge, experience, fatigue, alcohol/drugs, distraction, interpersonal relations	ALL
APP HUM 1.1.3	Monitor the effect of human information processing factors on decision making.	3	*Optional content: workload, stress, interpersonal relations, distraction, confidence*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 2 - MEDICAL AND PHYSIOLOGICAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 2.1 - Fatigue

APP HUM 2.1.1	State factors that cause fatigue.	1	Shift work *Optional content: night shifts and rosters*	ALL
APP HUM 2.1.2	Describe the onset of fatigue.	2	*Optional content: lack of concentration, listlessness, irritability, frustration, ICAO Circular 241 – AN/145 Human factors in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
APP HUM 2.1.3	Recognise the onset of fatigue in self.	1	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 241 – AN/145 Human factors in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
APP HUM 2.1.4	Recognise the onset of fatigue in others.	1		ALL
APP HUM 2.1.5	Describe appropriate action when recognising fatigue.	2		ALL

Subtopic HUM 2.2 - Fitness				
APP HUM 2.2.1	Recognise signs of lack of personal fitness.	1		ALL
APP HUM 2.2.2	Describe actions when aware of a lack of personal fitness.	2		ALL

TOPIC HUM 3 - SOCIAL AND ORGANISATIONAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 3.1 - Team resource management (TRM)				
APP HUM 3.1.1	State the relevance of TRM.	1	*Optional content: TRM course, EUROCONTROL Guidelines for the development of TRM training*	ALL
APP HUM 3.1.2	State the content of the TRM concept.	1	*Optional content: team work, human error, team roles, stress, decision making, communication, situational awareness*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 3.2 - Teamwork and team roles				
APP HUM 3.2.1	Identify reasons for conflict.	3		ALL
APP HUM 3.2.2	Describe actions to prevent human conflicts.	2	*Optional content: TRM team roles*	ALL
APP HUM 3.2.3	Describe strategies to cope with human conflicts.	2	*Optional content: in your team, in the simulator*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 3.3 - Responsible behaviour				
APP HUM 3.3.1	Consider the factors which influence responsible behaviour.	2	*Optional content: situation, team, personal situation and judgement, instance of justification, moral motivation, personality*	ALL
APP HUM 3.3.2	Apply responsible judgement.	3	Case study and discussion about a dilemma situation	ALL

TOPIC HUM 4 - STRESS

Subtopic HUM 4.1 - Stress				
APP HUM 4.1.1	Recognise the effects of stress on performance.	1	Stress and its symptoms in self and in others	ALL
Subtopic HUM 4.2 - Stress management				
APP HUM 4.2.1	Act to reduce stress.	3	The effect of personality in coping with stress, the benefits of active stress management	ALL
APP HUM 4.2.2	Respond to stressful situation by offering, asking or accepting assistance.	3	*Optional content: the benefits of offering, accepting and asking for help in stressful situations*	ALL
APP HUM 4.2.3	Recognise the effect of shocking and stressful events.	1	Self and others, abnormal situations, CISM	ALL
APP HUM 4.2.4	Consider the benefits of Critical Incident Stress Management (CISM).	2		ALL
APP HUM 4.2.5	Explain procedures used following an incident/accident.	2	*Optional content: CISM, counselling, human element*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 5 - HUMAN ERROR

Subtopic HUM 5.1 - Human error				
APP HUM 5.1.1	Explain the relationship between error and safety.	2	Number and combination of errors, proactive versus reactive approach to discovery of error *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
APP HUM 5.1.2	Differentiate between the types of error.	2	Slips, lapses, mistakes *Optional content: Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
APP HUM 5.1.3	Describe error-prone conditions.	2	*Optional content: increase in traffic, changes in procedures, complexities of systems or traffic, weather, unusual occurrences*	ALL

Subtopic HUM 5.1 - Human error				
APP HUM 5.1.4	Collect examples of different error types, their causes and consequences in ATC.	3	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
APP HUM 5.1.5	Explain how to detect errors to compensate for them.	2	STCA, MSAW, individual and collective strategy *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
APP HUM 5.1.6	Execute corrective actions.	3	Error compensation *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
APP HUM 5.1.7	Explain the importance of error management.	2	*Optional content: prevention of incidents, safety improvement, revision of procedures and/or working practises*	ALL
APP HUM 5.1.8	Describe the impact on an ATCO following an occurrence/incident.	2	*Optional content: reporting, SMS, investigation, CISM*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 5.2 - Violation of rules				
APP HUM 5.2.1	Explain the causes and dangers of violation of rules becoming accepted as a practice.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 6 - COLLABORATIVE WORK

Subtopic HUM 6.1 - Communication				
APP HUM 6.1.1	Use communication effectively in ATC.	3		ALL
APP HUM 6.1.2	Analyse examples of pilot and controller communication for effectiveness.	4		ALL

Subtopic HUM 6.2 - Collaborative work within the same area of responsibility				
APP HUM 6.2.1	List communication means between controllers in charge of the same area of responsibility (sector or tower).	1	*Optional content: electronic, written, verbal and non-verbal communication*	ALL
APP HUM 6.2.2	Explain consequences of the use of communication means on effectiveness.	2	*Optional content: strips legibility and encoding, labels designation, feedback*	ALL
APP HUM 6.2.3	List possible actions to provide a safe position handover.	1	*Optional content: rigour, preparation, overlap time*	ALL
APP HUM 6.2.4	Explain consequences of a missed position handover process.	2		ALL
Subtopic HUM 6.3 - Collaborative work between different areas of responsibility				
APP HUM 6.3.1	List factors and means for an effective coordination between sectors and/or tower positions.	1	*Optional content: other sectors constraints, electronic coordination tools*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 6.4 - Controller/pilot cooperation				
APP HUM 6.4.1	Describe parameters affecting controller/pilot cooperation.	2	*Optional content: workload, mutual knowledge, controller vs pilot mental picture*	ALL

SUBJECT 8: EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall integrate knowledge and understanding of the basic working principles of equipment and systems and comply with the equipment and system degradation procedures in the provision of ATS.

TOPIC EQPS 1 - VOICE COMMUNICATIONS

Subtopic EQPS 1.1 - Radio communications

APP EQPS 1.1.1	Operate two-way communication equipment.	3	Transmit/receive switches, procedures *Optional content: frequency selection, standby equipment*	ALL
APP EQPS 1.1.2	Identify indications of operational status of radio equipment.	3	*Optional content: indicator lights, serviceability displays, selector/frequency displays*	ALL
APP EQPS 1.1.3	Consider radio range.	2	*Optional content: transfer to another frequency, apparent radio failure, failure to establish radio contact, frequency protection range*	APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic EQPS 1.2 - Other voice communications

APP EQPS 1.2.1	Operate landline communications.	3	*Optional content: telephone, interphone and intercom equipment*	ALL

TOPIC EQPS 2 - AUTOMATION IN ATS

Subtopic EQPS 2.1 - Aeronautical fixed telecommunication network (AFTN)

APP EQPS 2.1.1	Decode AFTN messages.	3	*Optional content: movement and control messages, NOTAM, SNOWTAM, BIRDTAM, etc.*	ALL

Subtopic EQPS 2.2 - Automatic data interchange

APP EQPS 2.2.1	Use automatic data transfer equipment where available.	3	*Optional content: automated information and coordination, OLDI*	APP ACP

TOPIC EQPS 3 - CONTROLLER WORKING POSITION

Subtopic EQPS 3.1 - Operation and monitoring of equipment				
APP EQPS 3.1.1	Monitor the technical integrity of the controller working position.	3	Notification procedures, responsibilities	ALL
APP EQPS 3.1.2	Operate the equipment of the controller working position.	3	*Optional content: situation displays, flight progress board, flight data display, radio, telephone, maps and charts, strip-printer, clock, information systems, UDF/VDF*	ALL
APP EQPS 3.1.3	Operate available equipment in abnormal and emergency situations.	3		ALL
Subtopic EQPS 3.2 - Situation displays and information systems				
APP EQPS 3.2.1	Use situation displays.	3		ALL
APP EQPS 3.2.2	Check availability of information material.	3		ALL
APP EQPS 3.2.3	Obtain information from equipment.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic EQPS 3.3 - Flight data systems				
APP EQPS 3.3.1	Use the flight data information at controller working position.	3		ALL

TOPIC EQPS 4 - FUTURE EQUIPMENT

Subtopic EQPS 4.1 - New developments				
APP EQPS 4.1.1	Recognise future developments.	1	New advanced systems	ALL

TOPIC EQPS 5 - EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS LIMITATIONS AND DEGRADATION

Subtopic EQPS 5.1 - Reaction to limitations				
APP EQPS 5.1.1	Take account of the limitations of equipment and systems.	2		ALL
APP EQPS 5.1.2	Respond to technical deficiencies of the operational position.	3	Notification procedures, responsibilities	ALL
Subtopic EQPS 5.2 - Communication equipment degradation				
APP EQPS 5.2.1	Identify that communication equipment has degraded.	3	*Optional content: ground-air and landline communications*	
APP EQPS 5.2.2	Apply contingency procedures in the event of communication equipment degradation.	3	Procedures for total or partial degradation of ground-air and landline communications, alternative methods of transferring data	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic EQPS 5.3 - Navigational equipment degradation				
APP EQPS 5.3.1	Identify when a navigational equipment failure will affect operational ability.	3	*Optional content: VOR, navigational aids*	ALL
APP EQPS 5.3.2	Apply contingency procedures in the event of a navigational equipment degradation.	3	*Optional content: vertical separation, information to aircraft, navigational assistance, seeking assistance from adjacent units*	ADI APP ACP APS ACS

SUBJECT 9: PROFESSIONAL ENVIRONMENT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall identify the need for close cooperation with other parties concerning ATM operations and appreciate aspects of environmental protection.

TOPIC PEN 1 - FAMILIARISATION

Subtopic PEN 1.1 - Study visit to approach control unit

APP PEN 1.1.1	Appreciate the functions and provision of an operational approach control service.	3	Study visit to an approach control unit	APP APS

TOPIC PEN 2 - AIRSPACE USERS

Subtopic PEN 2.1 - Contributors to civil ATS operations

APP PEN 2.1.1	Characterise civil ATS activities in approach control unit.	2	Study visit to an approach control unit *Optional content: familiarisation visits to TWR, ACC, AIS, RCC*	APP APS
APP PEN 2.1.2	Characterise other parties interfacing with ATS operations.	2	*Optional content: familiarisation visits to engineering services, fire and emergency services, airline operations offices*	ALL

Subtopic PEN 2.2 - Contributors to military ATS operations

APP PEN 2.2.1	Characterise military ATS activities.	2	*Optional content: familiarisation visits to TWR, APP, ACC, AIS, RCC, Air Defence Units*	ALL

TOPIC PEN 3 - CUSTOMER RELATIONS

Subtopic PEN 3.1 - Provision of services and user requirements

APP PEN 3.1.1	Identify the role of ATC as a service provider.	3		ALL
APP PEN 3.1.2	Appreciate ATS users requirements.	3		ALL

TOPIC PEN 4 - ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Subtopic PEN 4.1 - Environmental protection

APP PEN 4.1.1	Describe the environmental constraints on aerodrome operations.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 303 - Operational opportunities to minimise fuel use and reduce emissions*	ADV ADI APP APS
APP PEN 4.1.2	Explain the use of Collaborative Environmental Management (CEM) process at airports.	2		ADV ADI APP APS
APP PEN 4.1.3	Appreciate the mitigation techniques used to minimise aviation's impact on the environment.	3	*Optional content: continuous descent operations (CDO), noise abatement procedures, noise preferential routes, flight efficiency*	APP APS

SUBJECT 10: ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall develop professional attitudes to manage traffic in abnormal and emergency situations.

TOPIC ABES 1 - ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS (ABES)

Subtopic ABES 1.1 - Overview of ABES

APP ABES 1.1.1	List common abnormal and emergency situations.	1	*Optional content: EATM Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations, ambulance flights, ground based safety nets alerts, airframe failure, unreliable instruments, runway incursion*	ALL
APP ABES 1.1.2	Identify potential or actual abnormal and emergency situations.	3		ALL
APP ABES 1.1.3	Take into account the procedures for given abnormal and emergency situations.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Doc 4444*	APP ACP APS ACS
APP ABES 1.1.4	Take into account that procedures do not exist for all abnormal and emergency situations.	2	*Optional content: real life examples*	ALL
APP ABES 1.1.5	Consider how the evolution of a situation may have an impact on safety.	2	*Optional content: separation, information, coordination*	ALL

TOPIC ABES 2 - SKILLS IMPROVEMENT

Subtopic ABES 2.1 - Communication effectiveness

APP ABES 2.1.1	Ensure effective communication in all circumstances including the case where standard phraseology is not applicable.	4	Phraseology, vocabulary, readback, silence instruction	ALL
APP ABES 2.1.2	Apply change of radiotelephony call sign.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL

Subtopic ABES 2.2 - Avoidance of mental overload				
APP ABES 2.2.1	Describe actions to keep control of the situation.	2	*Optional content: sector splitting, holding, flow management, task delegation*	ALL
APP ABES 2.2.2	Organise priority of actions.	4		ALL
APP ABES 2.2.3	Ensure effective circulation of information.	4	*Optional content: between executive and planner/coordinator, with the supervisor, between sectors, between ACC, APP and TWR , with ground staff, etc.*	ALL
APP ABES 2.2.4	Consider asking for help.	2		ALL
Subtopic ABES 2.3 - Air / ground cooperation				
APP ABES 2.3.1	Collect appropriate information relevant to the situation.	3		ALL
APP ABES 2.3.2	Assist the pilot.	3	Pilot workload *Optional content: instructions, information, support, human factors, etc.*	ALL

TOPIC ABES 3 - PROCEDURES FOR ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS

Subtopic ABES 3.1 - Application of procedures for ABES				
APP ABES 3.1.1	Apply the procedures for given abnormal and emergency situations.	3	*Optional content: EATM Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations, ambulance flights, ground based safety nets alerts, airframe failure*	ALL
Subtopic ABES 3.2 - Radio failure				
APP ABES 3.2.1	Describe the procedures followed by a pilot when he/she experiences complete or partial radio failure.	2	ICAO Doc 7030 *Optional content: military procedures*	ALL
APP ABES 3.2.2	Apply the procedures to be followed when a pilot experiences complete or partial radio failure.	3	*Optional content: prolonged loss of communication*	ALL

Subtopic ABES 3.3 - Unlawful interference and aircraft bomb threat				
APP ABES 3.3.1	Apply ATC procedures associated with unlawful interference and aircraft bomb threat.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
Subtopic ABES 3.4 - Strayed or unidentified aircraft				
APP ABES 3.4.1	Apply the procedures in the case of strayed aircraft.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: inside controlled airspace, outside controlled airspace*	ALL
APP ABES 3.4.2	Apply the procedures in the case of unidentified aircraft.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
Subtopic ABES 3.5 - Diversions				
APP ABES 3.5.1	Provide navigational assistance to diverting emergency aircraft.	4	Track/heading, distance, other navigational assistance *Optional content: nearest most suitable aerodrome*	APP ACP APS ACS

SUBJECT 11: AERODROMES

The subject objective is:

Learners shall recognise and understand the design and layout of aerodromes.

TOPIC AGA 1 - AERODROME DATA, LAYOUT AND COORDINATION

Subtopic AGA 1.1 - Definitions

APP AGA 1.1.1	Define aerodrome data.	1	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14 *Optional content: aerodrome elevation, reference point, apron, movement area, manoeuvring area, hot spot*	ADV ADI APP APS

Subtopic AGA 1.2 - Coordination

APP AGA 1.2.1	Identify the information that has to be passed between Air Traffic Services (ATS) and the airport authority.	3	Airport conditions, fire/rescue category, condition of ground equipment and NAVAIDs, AIRAC, Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM Airport conditions, Fire/rescue category, Condition of ground equipment and NAVAIDs, AIRAC, ICAO Annex 14	APP APS ADV ADI

TOPIC AGA 2 - MOVEMENT AREA

Subtopic AGA 2.1 - Movement area

APP AGA 2.1.1	Describe movement area.	2	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14	ADV ADI APP APS

Subtopic AGA 2.1 - Movement area				
APP AGA 2.1.2	Describe the marking of obstacles and unusable or unserviceable areas.	2	Flags, signs on pavement, lights	ADV ADI APP APS
APP AGA 2.1.3	Identify the information on conditions of the movement area that have to be passed to aircraft.	3	Essential information on aerodrome conditions	ADV ADI APP APS
Subtopic AGA 2.2 - Manoeuvring area				
APP AGA 2.2.1	Describe manoeuvring area.	2	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14	ADV ADI APP APS
APP AGA 2.2.2	Describe taxiway.	2		ADV ADI APP APS
APP AGA 2.2.3	Describe the daylight marking on taxiways.	2		ADV ADI APP APS
APP AGA 2.2.4	Describe taxiway lighting.	2		ADV ADI APP APS
Subtopic AGA 2.3 - Runways				
APP AGA 2.3.1	Describe runway.	2	Runway, runway surface, runway strip, shoulder, runway end safety areas, clearways, stopways	ADV ADI APP APS
APP AGA 2.3.2	Describe instrument runway.	2	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14	ADI APP APS

Subtopic AGA 2.3 - Runways				
APP AGA 2.3.3	Describe non-instrument runway.	2	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14	*ADV* ADI APP APS
APP AGA 2.3.4	Explain declared distances.	2	TORA, TODA, ASDA, LDA	*ADV* ADI APP APS
APP AGA 2.3.5	Explain the differences between ACN and PCN.	2	Strength of pavements	*ADV* ADI APP APS
APP AGA 2.3.6	Describe the daylight markings on runways.	2	*Optional content: runway designator, centre line, threshold, aiming point, fixed distance, touchdown zone, side strip, colour*	*ADV* ADI APP APS
APP AGA 2.3.7	Describe runway lights.	2	*Optional content: colour, centre line, intensity, edge, touchdown zone, threshold, barettes*	*ADV* ADI APP APS
APP AGA 2.3.8	Explain the functions of visual landing aids.	2	*Optional content: AVASI, VASI, PAPI*	*ADV* ADI APP APS
APP AGA 2.3.9	Describe the approach lighting systems.	2	Centre line, cross bars, stroboscopic lights, colours, intensity and brightness	*ADV* ADI APP APS
APP AGA 2.3.10	Characterise the effect of water/ice on runways.	2		*ADV* ADI APP APS
APP AGA 2.3.11	Explain braking action.	2	Braking action coefficient	*ADV* ADI APP APS
APP AGA 2.3.12	Explain the effect of runway visual range on aerodrome operation.	2		*ADV* ADI APP APS

TOPIC AGA 3 - OBSTACLES

Subtopic AGA 3.1 - Obstacle-free airspace around aerodromes

APP AGA 3.1.1	Explain the necessity for establishing and maintaining an obstacle-free airspace around aerodromes.	2		ADV ADI APP APS

TOPIC AGA 4 - MISCELLANEOUS EQUIPMENT

Subtopic AGA 4.1 - Location

APP AGA 4.1.1	Explain the location of different aerodrome ground equipment.	2	*Optional content: LLZ, GP, VDF, radio communication or ATS surveillance systems sensors, stopbars, AVASI, VASI, PAPI*	ADV ADI APP APS

Page intentionally left blank

www.eurocontrol.int

Network Manager
nominated by
the European Commission

EUROCONTROL

EUROCONTROL Specification

EUROCONTROL Specifications for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training

Annex 5: Area Control Procedural Rating - ACP

Edition: 2.0
Edition date: 02/04/2015
Reference Number: EUROCONTROL-SPEC-157

EUROPEAN ORGANISATION
FOR THE SAFETY OF AIR NAVIGATION

EUROCONTROL

EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training

Annex 5 Area Control Procedural Rating ACP

Edition Number	:	2.0
Edition Date	:	02/04/2015
Status	:	Released Issue
Intended for	:	NMD Stakeholders

NETWORK MANAGER DIRECTORATE

Page intentionally left blank

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Annex 5 of the EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training V2.0 details the training objectives for the **Rating ATC training: Area Control Procedural**.

For training organisations providing ATCO training to meet the requirements laid down in the **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340 laying down technical requirements and administrative procedures relating to air traffic controllers' licences and certificates**, and the acceptable means of compliance (AMCs) associated with the regulation, this syllabus does not change any of the content in the regulation, but rather provides a document that combines the relevant elements into a familiar user format. For European organisations not required to comply with EU legislation, it provides an **Area Control Procedural Rating training syllab**us that retains references to ICAO documentation.

Rating training is defined ***as theoretical and practical training designed to impart knowledge and practical skills related to a specific rating and, if applicable, rating endorsement.***

The composition and topics were chosen based on the **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340** Annex I — Rating training (Reference: Annex I — Part ATCO Subpart D, Section 2, ATCO.D.010(a)(2)(iv)) and ICAO Annex 1 requirements for an Air Traffic Control licence. The structure of the syllabus reflects a logical grouping of objectives into coherent subjects.

The order of subjects and objectives is neither intended to convey a pedagogical sequence nor to indicate a relative level of importance. No recommendation is made in this area. When teaching the objectives, it is envisaged that different training methodologies will be used.

Prior to developing or updating the **ACP Rating training course,** training providers must be familiar with the information contained in the EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training V2.0, particularly Section 6 (How to use this document) which contains, amongst other items, the fundamental principles that are applied to the Specification.

Page intentionally left blank

Contents

Page intentionally left blank

SUBJECT 1: INTRODUCTION TO THE COURSE

The subject objective is:

Learners shall know and understand the training programme that they will follow and learn how to obtain the appropriate information.

TOPIC INTR 1 - COURSE MANAGEMENT

Subtopic INTR 1.1 - Course introduction				
ACP INTR 1.1.1	Explain the aims and main objectives of the course.	2		ALL
Subtopic INTR 1.2 - Course administration				
ACP INTR 1.2.1	State course administration.	1		ALL
Subtopic INTR 1.3 - Study material and training documentation				
ACP INTR 1.3.1	Use appropriate documentation and their sources for course studies.	3	*Optional content: training documentation, library, CBT library, web, learning management server*	ALL
ACP INTR 1.3.2	Integrate appropriate information into course studies.	4	Training documentation *Optional content: supplementary information, library*	ALL

TOPIC INTR 2 - INTRODUCTION TO THE ATC TRAINING COURSE

Subtopic INTR 2.1 - Course content and organisation				
ACP INTR 2.1.1	State the different training methods applied in the course.	1	Theoretical training, practical training, self-study, types of training events	ALL
ACP INTR 2.1.2	State the subjects of the course and their purpose.	1		ALL
ACP INTR 2.1.3	Describe the organisation of theoretical training.	2	*Optional content: course programme*	ALL
ACP INTR 2.1.4	Describe the organisation of practical training.	2	*Optional content: PTP, simulation, briefing, debriefing, course programme*	ALL

Subtopic INTR 2.2 - Training ethos				
ACP INTR 2.2.1	Recognise the feedback mechanisms available.	1	Training progress, assessment, briefing, debriefing, learner/instructor feedback, instructor/instructor feedback	ALL
Subtopic INTR 2.3 - Assessment process				
ACP INTR 2.3.1	Describe the assessment process.	2		ALL

SUBJECT 2: AVIATION LAW

The subject objective is:

Learners shall know, understand and apply the Rules of the Air and the Regulations regarding reporting, airspace and appreciate the Licensing and Competence principles.

TOPIC LAW 1 - ATCO LICENSING/CERTIFICATE OF COMPETENCE

Subtopic LAW 1.1 - Privileges and conditions				
ACP LAW 1.1.1	Appreciate the conditions which shall be met to issue an Area Control Procedural rating.	3	Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on ATCO Licensing ICAO Annex 1 *Optional content: national documents*	ACP
ACP LAW 1.1.2	Explain how to maintain and update professional knowledge and skills to retain competence in the operational environment.	2		ALL
ACP LAW 1.1.3	Explain the conditions for suspension/revocation of ATCO licence.	2	Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on ATCO Licensing ICAO Annex 1	ALL

TOPIC LAW 2 - RULES AND REGULATIONS

Subtopic LAW 2.1 - Reports				
ACP LAW 2.1.1	List the standard forms for reports.	1	Air traffic incident report *Optional content: routine air reports, breach of regulations, watch/log book, records*	ALL
ACP LAW 2.1.2	Describe the functions of, and processes for, reporting.	2	Reporting culture, air traffic incident report *Optional content: breach of regulations, watch/log book, records, voluntary reporting, ESARR 2*	ALL
ACP LAW 2.1.3	Use forms for reporting.	3	Regulation (EU) No 376/2014, air traffic incident reporting form(s) ICAO Doc 4444 Appendix 4, air traffic incident reporting form(s) *Optional content: routine air reports, breach of regulations, watch/log book, records*	ALL

Subtopic LAW 2.2 - Airspace				
ACP LAW 2.2.1	Appreciate classes and structure of airspace and their relevance to Area Control Procedural rating operations.	3		ACP
ACP LAW 2.2.2	Provide planning, coordination and control actions appropriate to the airspace classification and structure.	4	*Optional content: Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 2, ICAO Annex 11, international requirements, civil requirements, military requirements, areas of responsibility, sectorization, national requirements*	ALL
ACP LAW 2.2.3	Appreciate responsibility for terrain clearance.	3		ALL

TOPIC LAW 3 - ATC SAFETY MANAGEMENT

Subtopic LAW 3.1 - Feedback process				
ACP LAW 3.1.1	State the importance of controller contribution to the feedback process.	1	*Optional content: voluntary reporting*	ALL
ACP LAW 3.1.2	Describe how reported occurrences are analysed.	2	*Optional content: ESARR 2, local procedures*	ALL
ACP LAW 3.1.3	Name the means used to disseminate recommendations.	1	*Optional content: safety letters, safety boards web pages*	ALL
ACP LAW 3.1.4	Appreciate the 'Just Culture' concept.	3	Benefits, prerequisites, constraints *Optional content: EAM 2 GUI 6, GAIN Report*	ALL
Subtopic LAW 3.2 - Safety Investigation				
ACP LAW 3.2.1	Describe role and mission of Safety Investigation in the improvement of safety.	2		ALL
ACP LAW 3.2.2	Define working methods of Safety Investigation.	1		ALL

SUBJECT 3: AIR TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall manage air traffic to ensure safe, orderly and expeditious services.

TOPIC ATM 1 - PROVISION OF SERVICES

Subtopic ATM 1.1 - Air traffic control (ATC) service				
ACP ATM 1.1.1	Appreciate own area of responsibility.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 1.1.2	Provide area control service.	4	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 7030, ICAO Doc 4444, operation manuals ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 7030, ICAO Doc 4444, operation manuals	ACP ACS
Subtopic ATM 1.2 - Flight information service (FIS)				
ACP ATM 1.2.1	Provide FIS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	*ALL*
ACP ATM 1.2.2	Issue appropriate information concerning the location of conflicting traffic.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, traffic information, essential traffic information	APP ACP *APS* *ACS*
Subtopic ATM 1.3 - Alerting service (ALRS)				
ACP ATM 1.3.1	Provide ALRS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
ACP ATM 1.3.2	Respond to distress and urgency messages and signals.	3	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 10, ICAO Doc 4444 ICAO Annex 10, ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: EUROCONTROL Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations*	ALL

Subtopic ATM 1.4 - ATS system capacity and air traffic flow management				
ACP ATM 1.4.1	Appreciate principles of ATS system capacity and air traffic flow management.	3	*Optional content: EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual, FABs, FUA, free flight, etc.*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 1.4.2	Apply flow management procedures in the provision of ATC.	3	*Optional content: EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 1.4.3	Organise traffic flows and patterns to take account of airspace boundaries.	4	*Optional content: civil and military, controlled, uncontrolled, advisory, restricted, danger, prohibited, special rules, sector boundaries, national boundaries, FIR boundaries, delegated airspace, transfer of control, transfer of communications, en-route, off-route*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 1.4.4	Organise traffic flows and patterns to take account of areas of responsibility.	4	*Optional content: EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 1.4.5	Inform supervisor of situation.	3	*Optional content: abnormal situations, decrease in sector capacity, limitations on systems and equipment, changes in workload/capacity, unusual meteorological conditions, relevant information like: reported ground-based incidents, forest fire, smoke, oil pollution*	APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic ATM 1.5 - Airspace management (ASM)				
ACP ATM 1.5.1	Appreciate the principles and means of ASM.	3	Regulation (EC) No 551/2004, Regulation (EC) 2150/2005, Regulation (EC) No 730/2006 EUROCONTROL ASM HBK - Airspace Management Handbook for the application of FUA *Optional content: FABs, EUROCONTROL Specification for the application of FUA, TSAs, CDRs, CBAs*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 1.5.2	Organise traffic to take account of ASM.	4	*Optional content: CDR, TSA, TRA, CBA, real-time activation, deactivation or reallocation of airspace*	*APP* ACP

TOPIC ATM 2 - COMMUNICATION

Subtopic ATM 2.1 - Effective communication				
ACP ATM 2.1.1	Use approved phraseology.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: ICAO Doc 9432 RTF manual, standard words and phrases as contained in ICAO Annex 10 Vol. 2*	ALL
ACP ATM 2.1.2	Ensure effective communication.	4	Communication techniques, readback/verification of readback	ALL

TOPIC ATM 3 - ATC CLEARANCES AND ATC INSTRUCTIONS

Subtopic ATM 3.1 - ATC clearances				
ACP ATM 3.1.1	Issue appropriate ATC clearances.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
ACP ATM 3.1.2	Integrate appropriate ATC clearances in control service.	4		ALL
ACP ATM 3.1.3	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL

Subtopic ATM 3.2 - ATC instructions				
ACP ATM 3.2.1	Issue appropriate ATC instructions.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
ACP ATM 3.2.2	Integrate appropriate ATC instructions in control service.	4		ALL
ACP ATM 3.2.3	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL
TOPIC ATM 4 - COORDINATION				
Subtopic ATM 4.1 - Necessity for coordination				
ACP ATM 4.1.1	Identify the need for coordination.	3		ALL
Subtopic ATM 4.2 - Tools and methods for coordination				
ACP ATM 4.2.1	Use the available tools for coordination.	3	*Optional content: electronic transfer of flight data, telephone, interphone, intercom, direct speech, radiotelephone (RTF), local agreements, automated system coordination*	ALL
Subtopic ATM 4.3 - Coordination procedures				
ACP ATM 4.3.1	Initiate appropriate coordination.	3	Delegation/transfer of responsibility for air-ground communications and separation, transfer of control, etc. ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: release point*	ALL
ACP ATM 4.3.2	Analyse effect of coordination requested by an adjacent position/unit.	4	*Optional content: delegation/transfer of responsibility for air-ground communications and separation, release point, transfer of control, etc.*	ALL
ACP ATM 4.3.3	Select, after negotiation, an appropriate course of action.	5		ALL

Subtopic ATM 4.3 - Coordination procedures				
ACP ATM 4.3.4	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL
ACP ATM 4.3.5	Coordinate in the provision of FIS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
ACP ATM 4.3.6	Coordinate in the provision of ALRS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL

TOPIC ATM 5 - ALTIMETRY AND LEVEL ALLOCATION

Subtopic ATM 5.1 - Altimetry				
ACP ATM 5.1.1	Allocate levels according to altimetry data.	4	ICAO Doc 8168, ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
ACP ATM 5.1.2	Ensure separation according to altimetry data.	4	*Optional content: transition level, transition altitude, transition layer, height, flight level, altitude, vertical distance to airspace boundaries*	ALL
Subtopic ATM 5.2 - Terrain clearance				
ACP ATM 5.2.1	Provide planning, coordination and control actions appropriate to the rules for minimum safe levels and terrain clearance.	4	*Optional content: terrain clearance dimensions, minimum safe altitudes, transition level, minimum flight level, minimum sector altitude*	APP ACP

TOPIC ATM 6 - SEPARATIONS

Subtopic ATM 6.1 - Vertical separation				
ACP ATM 6.1.1	Provide standard vertical separation.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030, level allocation, during climb/descent, rate of climb/descent, RVSM, non-RVSM aircraft, holding pattern	ACP ACS
ACP ATM 6.1.2	Provide increased vertical separation.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030 *Optional content: level allocation, during climb/descent, rate of climb/descent*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 6.1.3	Appreciate the application of vertical emergency separation.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 6.2 - Horizontal separation				
ACP ATM 6.2.1	Provide longitudinal separation.	4	Based on time, based on distance (DME and/or GNSS, RNAV) *Optional content: based on time with Mach number technique*	ACP
ACP ATM 6.2.2	Provide lateral separation.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030, holding	APP ACP
ACP ATM 6.2.3	Provide track separation.	4		ACP APP
ACP ATM 6.2.4	Provide geographical separation.	4	Visual, using navigation aids, area navigation	ACP APP

TOPIC ATM 7 - AIRBORNE COLLISION AVOIDANCE SYSTEMS AND GROUND-BASED SAFETY NETS

Subtopic ATM 7.1 - Airborne collision avoidance systems

ACP ATM 7.1.1	Differentiate between ACAS advisory thresholds and separation standards applicable in the area control environment.	2	ICAO Doc 9863 *Optional content: EUROCONTROL TCAS web page*	ACP ACS
ACP ATM 7.1.2	Describe the controller responsibility during and following an ACAS RA reported by pilot.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
ACP ATM 7.1.3	Respond to pilot notification of actions based on airborne systems warnings.	3	ACAS, TAWS *Optional content: EUROCONTROL ACAS web page*	ALL

TOPIC ATM 8 - DATA DISPLAY

Subtopic ATM 8.1 - Data management

ACP ATM 8.1.1	Update the data display to accurately reflect the traffic situation.	3	*Optional content: information displayed, strip marking procedures, electronic information data displays, actions based on traffic display information, calculation of EETs*	ALL
ACP ATM 8.1.2	Analyse pertinent data on data displays.	4		ALL
ACP ATM 8.1.3	Organise pertinent data on data displays.	4		ALL
ACP ATM 8.1.4	Obtain flight plan information.	3	CPL, FPL, supplementary information *Optional content: RPL, AFIL, etc.*	ALL
ACP ATM 8.1.5	Use flight plan information.	3		ALL

TOPIC ATM 9 - OPERATIONAL ENVIRONMENT (SIMULATED)

Subtopic ATM 9.1 - Integrity of the operational environment				
ACP ATM 9.1.1	Obtain information concerning the operational environment.	3	*Optional content: briefing, notices, local orders, verification of information*	ALL
ACP ATM 9.1.2	Ensure the integrity of the operational environment.	4	*Optional content: integrity of displays, verification of the information provided by displays, etc.*	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 9.2 - Verification of the currency of operational procedures				
ACP ATM 9.2.1	Check all relevant documentation before managing traffic.	3	*Optional content: briefing, LOAs, NOTAM, AICs*	ALL
ACP ATM 9.2.2	Manage traffic in accordance with procedural changes.	4		APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 9.3 - Handover-takeover				
ACP ATM 9.3.1	Transfer information to the relieving controller.	3		ALL
ACP ATM 9.3.2	Obtain information from the controller handing over.	3		ALL

TOPIC ATM 10 - PROVISION OF CONTROL SERVICE

Subtopic ATM 10.1 - Responsibility and processing of information

ACP ATM 10.1.1	Describe the division of responsibility between air traffic control units.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	*ALL*
ACP ATM 10.1.2	Describe the responsibility in regard to military traffic.	2	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: ICAO Doc 9554*	*ALL*
ACP ATM 10.1.3	Describe the responsibility in regard to unmanned free balloons.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 10.1.4	Obtain operational information.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, local operation manuals	APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 10.1.5	Interpret operational information.	5		APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 10.1.6	Organise forwarding of operational information.	4	*Optional content: including the use of backup procedures*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 10.1.7	Integrate operational information into control decisions.	4		APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 10.1.8	Appreciate the influence of operational requirements.	3	*Optional content: military flying, calibration flights, aerial photography*	*ALL*

Subtopic ATM 10.2 - Area control

ACP ATM 10.2.1	Explain the responsibility for the provision of an area procedural control service.	2	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Annex 11, local operation manuals	ACP
ACP ATM 10.2.2	Provide planning, coordination and control actions appropriate to the VFR and IFR in VMC and IMC.	4	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 4444 ICAO Annex 2, ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 4444	ACP *ACS*

Subtopic ATM 10.3 - Traffic management process				
ACP ATM 10.3.1	Ensure that situational awareness is maintained.	4	Information gathering, traffic projection	APP ACP
ACP ATM 10.3.2	Detect conflicts in time for appropriate resolution.	4		ALL
ACP ATM 10.3.3	Identify potential solutions to achieve a safe and effective traffic flow.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 10.3.4	Evaluate possible outcomes of different planning and control actions.	5		APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 10.3.5	Select an appropriate plan in time to achieve safe and effective traffic flow.	5		APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 10.3.6	Ensure an adequate priority of actions.	4		*ALL*
ACP ATM 10.3.7	Execute selected plan in a timely manner.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 10.3.8	Ensure a safe and efficient outcome is achieved.	4	Traffic monitoring, adaptability and follow up	ALL
Subtopic ATM 10.4 - Handling traffic				
ACP ATM 10.4.1	Manage arrivals, departures and overflights.	4		APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 10.4.2	Balance the workload against personal capacity.	5	*Optional content: re-routing, re-planning, prioritising solutions, denying requests, delegating responsibility for separation*	APP ACP APS ACS

TOPIC ATM 11 - HOLDING

Subtopic ATM 11.1 - General holding procedures				
ACP ATM 11.1.1	Apply holding procedures.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, holding instructions, allocation of holding levels, onward clearance times	APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ATM 11.1.2	Appreciate the factors affecting holding patterns.	3	Effect of speed, effect of level used, effect of navigation aid in use, turbulence, aircraft type	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 11.2 - Holding aircraft				
ACP ATM 11.2.1	Calculate expected onward clearance times.	3		ACP ACS

SUBJECT 4: METEOROLOGY

The subject objective is:

Learners shall acquire, decode and make proper use of meteorological information relevant to the provision of ATS.

TOPIC MET 1 - METEOROLOGICAL PHENOMENA

Subtopic MET 1.1 - Meteorological phenomena

ACP MET 1.1.1	Appreciate the impact of adverse weather.	3	Thunderstorms, icing, jet streams, clear air turbulence (CAT), turbulence, microburst, severe mountain waves, line squalls, volcanic ash *Optional content: solar radiation*	ACP ACS
ACP MET 1.1.2	Integrate data about meteorological phenomena into provision of ATS.	4	Clearances, instructions and transmitted information *Optional content: relevant meteorological phenomena*	*ALL*
ACP MET 1.1.3	Use techniques to avoid adverse weather when necessary/possible.	3	Re-routing, level change, etc.	APP ACP APS ACS

TOPIC MET 2 - SOURCES OF METEOROLOGICAL DATA

Subtopic MET 2.1 - Sources of meteorological information

ACP MET 2.1.1	Obtain meteorological information	3	METAR, TAF, SIGMET, AIRMET *Optional content: AIREP/AIREP Special*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACP MET 2.1.2	Relay meteorological information.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: flight information centre, adjacent ATS unit*	*ALL*

SUBJECT 5: NAVIGATION

The subject objective is:

Learners shall analyse all navigational aspects in order to organise the traffic.

TOPIC NAV 1 - MAPS AND AERONAUTICAL CHARTS

Subtopic NAV 1.1 - Maps and charts

ACP NAV 1.1.1	Use relevant maps and charts.	3		*APP* ACP *APS* ACS

TOPIC NAV 2 - INSTRUMENT NAVIGATION

Subtopic NAV 2.1 - Navigational systems

ACP NAV 2.1.1	Manage traffic in case of change in the operational status of navigational systems.	4	*Optional content: limitations, status of ground-based and satellite-based systems*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACP NAV 2.1.2	Appreciate the effect of precision, limitations and change of the operational status of navigational systems.	3	*Optional content: limitations, status, degraded procedures*	*ALL*

Subtopic NAV 2.2 - Navigational assistance

ACP NAV 2.2.1	Evaluate the necessary information to be provided to pilots in need of navigational assistance.	5	*Optional content: nearest most suitable aerodrome, track, heading, distance, aerodrome information, any other navigational assistance relevant at the time*	*APP* ACP *APS* ACS

Subtopic NAV 2.3 - PBN applications

ACP NAV 2.3.1	State the navigation applications used in terminal and en-route environments.	1	Terminal-RNAV-1 (≈P-RNAV); En-route-RNAV-5 (B-RNAV) *Optional content: A-RNP, EC PBN Implementing Rule, ICAO Doc 9613*	ACP ACS
ACP NAV 2.3.2	Explain the principles and designation of navigation specifications in use.	2	*Optional content: performance, functionality, sensors, aircrew and controller requirements*	*APP* ACP *APS* ACS

Subtopic NAV 2.3 - PBN applications				
ACP NAV 2.3.3	State future PBN developments.	1	A-RNP, APV *Optional content: RNP 3D, RNP 4D*	*ADI* *APP* ACP *APS* ACS

SUBJECT 6: AIRCRAFT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall assess and integrate aircraft performance in the provision of ATS.

TOPIC ACFT 1 - AIRCRAFT INSTRUMENTS

Subtopic ACFT 1.1 - Aircraft instruments

ACP ACFT 1.1.1	Integrate information from aircraft instruments provided by the pilot in the provision of ATS.	4		ALL
ACP ACFT 1.1.2	Explain the operation of aircraft radio equipment.	2	*Optional content: radios (number of), emergency radios*	ALL

TOPIC ACFT 2 - AIRCRAFT CATEGORIES

Subtopic ACFT 2.1 - Wake turbulence

ACP ACFT 2.1.1	Explain the wake turbulence effect and associated hazards to the succeeding aircraft.	2		ALL
ACP ACFT 2.1.2	Appreciate the techniques used to prevent hazards associated with wake turbulence on succeeding aircraft.	3		ALL

TOPIC ACFT 3 - FACTORS AFFECTING AIRCRAFT PERFORMANCE

Subtopic ACFT 3.1 - Climb factors

ACP ACFT 3.1.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during climb.	4	*Optional content: speed, mass, air density, cabin pressurisation, wind and temperature*	APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic ACFT 3.2 - Cruise factors

ACP ACFT 3.2.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during cruise.	4	Level, cruising speed, wind, mass, cabin pressurisation	APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic ACFT 3.3 - Descent factors				
ACP ACFT 3.3.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during descent.	4	*Optional content: wind, speed, rate of descent, cabin pressurisation*	ACP ACS
Subtopic ACFT 3.4 - Economic factors				
ACP ACFT 3.4.1	Integrate consideration of economic factors affecting aircraft.	4	*Optional content: routing, level, speed, rate of climb and rate of descent, approach profile, top of descent*	ACP ACS
ACP ACFT 3.4.2	Use continuous climb techniques where applicable.	3		*APP* ACP *APS* ACS
ACP ACFT 3.4.3	Use direct routing where applicable.	3		*APP* ACP *APS* ACS
Subtopic ACFT 3.5 - Environmental factors				
ACP ACFT 3.5.1	Appreciate the performance restrictions due to environmental constraints.	3	*Optional content: fuel dumping, minimum flight levels, continuous descent operations*	ACP ACS
TOPIC ACFT 4 - AIRCRAFT DATA				
Subtopic ACFT 4.1 - Performance data				
ACP ACFT 4.1.1	Integrate the average performance data of a representative sample of aircraft which will be encountered in the operational/working environment into the provision of a control service.	4	Performance data under a representative variety of circumstances	APP ACP APS ACS

SUBJECT 7: HUMAN FACTORS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall recognise the necessity to constantly extend their knowledge and analyse factors which affect personal and team performance.

TOPIC HUM 1 - PSYCHOLOGICAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 1.1 - Cognitive				
ACP HUM 1.1.1	Describe the human information processing model.	2	Attention, perception, memory, situational awareness, decision making, response	ALL
ACP HUM 1.1.2	Describe the factors which influence human information processing.	2	Confidence, stress, learning, knowledge, experience, fatigue, alcohol/drugs, distraction, interpersonal relations	ALL
ACP HUM 1.1.3	Monitor the effect of human information processing factors on decision making.	3	*Optional content: workload, stress, interpersonal relations, distraction, confidence*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 2 - MEDICAL AND PHYSIOLOGICAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 2.1 - Fatigue				
ACP HUM 2.1.1	State factors that cause fatigue.	1	Shift work *Optional content: night shifts and rosters*	ALL
ACP HUM 2.1.2	Describe the onset of fatigue.	2	*Optional content: lack of concentration, listlessness, irritability, frustration, ICAO Circular 241 – AN/145 Human factors in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ACP HUM 2.1.3	Recognise the onset of fatigue in self.	1	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 241 – AN/145 Human factors in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ACP HUM 2.1.4	Recognise the onset of fatigue in others.	1		ALL
ACP HUM 2.1.5	Describe appropriate action when recognising fatigue.	2		ALL

Subtopic HUM 2.2 - Fitness				
ACP HUM 2.2.1	Recognise signs of lack of personal fitness.	1		ALL
ACP HUM 2.2.2	Describe actions when aware of a lack of personal fitness.	2		ALL

TOPIC HUM 3 - SOCIAL AND ORGANISATIONAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 3.1 - Team resource management (TRM)				
ACP HUM 3.1.1	State the relevance of TRM.	1	*Optional content: TRM course, EUROCONTROL Guidelines for the development of TRM training*	ALL
ACP HUM 3.1.2	State the content of the TRM concept.	1	*Optional content: team work, human error, team roles, stress, decision making, communication, situational awareness*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 3.2 - Teamwork and team roles				
ACP HUM 3.2.1	Identify reasons for conflict.	3		ALL
ACP HUM 3.2.2	Describe actions to prevent human conflicts.	2	*Optional content: TRM team roles*	ALL
ACP HUM 3.2.3	Describe strategies to cope with human conflicts.	2	*Optional content: in your team, in the simulator*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 3.3 - Responsible behaviour				
ACP HUM 3.3.1	Consider the factors which influence responsible behaviour.	2	*Optional content: situation, team, personal situation and judgement, instance of justification, moral motivation, personality*	ALL
ACP HUM 3.3.2	Apply responsible judgement.	3	Case study and discussion about a dilemma situation	ALL

TOPIC HUM 4 - STRESS

Subtopic HUM 4.1 - Stress

ACP HUM 4.1.1	Recognise the effects of stress on performance.	1	Stress and its symptoms in self and in others	ALL

Subtopic HUM 4.2 - Stress management

ACP HUM 4.2.1	Act to reduce stress.	3	The effect of personality in coping with stress, the benefits of active stress management	ALL
ACP HUM 4.2.2	Respond to stressful situation by offering, asking or accepting assistance.	3	*Optional content: the benefits of offering, accepting and asking for help in stressful situations*	ALL
ACP HUM 4.2.3	Recognise the effect of shocking and stressful events.	1	Self and others, abnormal situations, CISM	ALL
ACP HUM 4.2.4	Consider the benefits of Critical Incident Stress Management (CISM).	2		ALL
ACP HUM 4.2.5	Explain procedures used following an incident/accident.	2	*Optional content: CISM, counselling, human element*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 5 - HUMAN ERROR

Subtopic HUM 5.1 - Human error

ACP HUM 5.1.1	Explain the relationship between error and safety.	2	Number and combination of errors, proactive versus reactive approach to discovery of error *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ACP HUM 5.1.2	Differentiate between the types of error.	2	Slips, lapses, mistakes *Optional content: Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL

Subtopic HUM 5.1 - Human error				
ACP HUM 5.1.3	Describe error-prone conditions.	2	*Optional content: increase in traffic, changes in procedures, complexities of systems or traffic, weather, unusual occurrences*	ALL
ACP HUM 5.1.4	Collect examples of different error types, their causes and consequences in ATC.	3	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ACP HUM 5.1.5	Explain how to detect errors to compensate for them.	2	STCA, MSAW, individual and collective strategy *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ACP HUM 5.1.6	Execute corrective actions.	3	Error compensation *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ACP HUM 5.1.7	Explain the importance of error management.	2	*Optional content: prevention of incidents, safety improvement, revision of procedures and/or working practises*	ALL
ACP HUM 5.1.8	Describe the impact on an ATCO following an occurrence/incident.	2	*Optional content: reporting, SMS, investigation, CISM*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 5.2 - Violation of rules				
ACP HUM 5.2.1	Explain the causes and dangers of violation of rules becoming accepted as a practice.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 6 - COLLABORATIVE WORK

Subtopic HUM 6.1 - Communication				
ACP HUM 6.1.1	Use communication effectively in ATC.	3		ALL
ACP HUM 6.1.2	Analyse examples of pilot and controller communication for effectiveness.	4		ALL
Subtopic HUM 6.2 - Collaborative work within the same area of responsibility				
ACP HUM 6.2.1	List communication means between controllers in charge of the same area of responsibility (sector or tower).	1	*Optional content: electronic, written, verbal and non-verbal communication*	ALL
ACP HUM 6.2.2	Explain consequences of the use of communication means on effectiveness.	2	*Optional content: strips legibility and encoding, labels designation, feedback*	ALL
ACP HUM 6.2.3	List possible actions to provide a safe position handover.	1	*Optional content: rigour, preparation, overlap time*	ALL
ACP HUM 6.2.4	Explain consequences of a missed position handover process.	2		ALL
Subtopic HUM 6.3 - Collaborative work between different areas of responsibility				
ACP HUM 6.3.1	List factors and means for an effective coordination between sectors and/or tower positions.	1	*Optional content: other sectors constraints, electronic coordination tools*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 6.4 - Controller/pilot cooperation				
ACP HUM 6.4.1	Describe parameters affecting controller/pilot cooperation.	2	*Optional content: workload, mutual knowledge, controller vs pilot mental picture*	ALL

SUBJECT 8: EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall integrate knowledge and understanding of the basic working principles of equipment and systems and comply with the equipment and system degradation procedures in the provision of ATS.

TOPIC EQPS 1 - VOICE COMMUNICATIONS

Subtopic EQPS 1.1 - Radio communications

ACP EQPS 1.1.1	Operate two-way communication equipment.	3	Transmit/receive switches, procedures *Optional content: frequency selection, standby equipment*	ALL
ACP EQPS 1.1.2	Identify indications of operational status of radio equipment.	3	*Optional content: indicator lights, serviceability displays, selector/frequency displays*	ALL
ACP EQPS 1.1.3	Consider radio range.	2	*Optional content: transfer to another frequency, apparent radio failure, failure to establish radio contact, frequency protection range*	APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic EQPS 1.2 - Other voice communications

ACP EQPS 1.2.1	Operate landline communications.	3	*Optional content: telephone, interphone and intercom equipment*	ALL

TOPIC EQPS 2 - AUTOMATION IN ATS

Subtopic EQPS 2.1 - Aeronautical fixed telecommunication network (AFTN)

ACP EQPS 2.1.1	Decode AFTN messages.	3	*Optional content: movement and control messages, NOTAM, SNOWTAM, BIRDTAM, etc.*	ALL

Subtopic EQPS 2.2 - Automatic data interchange				
ACP EQPS 2.2.1	Use automatic data transfer equipment where available.	3	*Optional content: automated information and coordination, OLDI*	APP ACP

TOPIC EQPS 3 - CONTROLLER WORKING POSITION

Subtopic EQPS 3.1 - Operation and monitoring of equipment				
ACP EQPS 3.1.1	Monitor the technical integrity of the controller working position.	3	Notification procedures, responsibilities	ALL
ACP EQPS 3.1.2	Operate the equipment of the controller working position.	3	*Optional content: situation displays, flight progress board, flight data display, radio, telephone, maps and charts, strip-printer, clock, information systems, UDF/VDF*	ALL
ACP EQPS 3.1.3	Operate available equipment in abnormal and emergency situations.	3		ALL
Subtopic EQPS 3.2 - Situation displays and information systems				
ACP EQPS 3.2.1	Use situation displays.	3		ALL
ACP EQPS 3.2.2	Check availability of information material.	3		ALL
ACP EQPS 3.2.3	Obtain information from equipment.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic EQPS 3.3 - Flight data systems				
ACP EQPS 3.3.1	Use the flight data information at controller working position.	3		ALL

TOPIC EQPS 4 - FUTURE EQUIPMENT

Subtopic EQPS 4.1 - New developments

ACP EQPS 4.1.1	Recognise future developments.	1	New advanced systems	ALL

TOPIC EQPS 5 - EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS LIMITATIONS AND DEGRADATION

Subtopic EQPS 5.1 - Reaction to limitations

ACP EQPS 5.1.1	Take account of the limitations of equipment and systems.	2		ALL
ACP EQPS 5.1.2	Respond to technical deficiencies of the operational position.	3	Notification procedures, responsibilities	ALL

Subtopic EQPS 5.2 - Communication equipment degradation

ACP EQPS 5.2.1	Identify that communication equipment has degraded.	3	*Optional content: ground-air and landline communications*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACP EQPS 5.2.2	Apply contingency procedures in the event of communication equipment degradation.	3	Procedures for total or partial degradation of ground-air and landline communications, alternative methods of transferring data	APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic EQPS 5.3 - Navigational equipment degradation

ACP EQPS 5.3.1	Identify when a navigational equipment failure will affect operational ability.	3	*Optional content: VOR, navigational aids*	ALL
ACP EQPS 5.3.2	Apply contingency procedures in the event of a navigational equipment degradation.	3	Optional content: vertical separation, information to aircraft, navigational assistance, seeking assistance from adjacent units	ADI APP ACP APS ACS

SUBJECT 9: PROFESSIONAL ENVIRONMENT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall identify the need for close cooperation with other parties concerning ATM operations and appreciate aspects of environmental protection.

TOPIC PEN 1 - FAMILIARISATION

Subtopic PEN 1.1 - Study visit to area control centre

ACP PEN 1.1.1	Appreciate the functions and provision of an operational area control service.	3	Study visit to area control centre	ACP ACS

TOPIC PEN 2 - AIRSPACE USERS

Subtopic PEN 2.1 - Contributors to civil ATS operations

ACP PEN 2.1.1	Characterise civil ATS activities in area control centre.	2	Study visit to an area control centre *Optional content: familiarisation visits to TWR, APP, AIS, RCC*	ACP ACS
ACP PEN 2.1.2	Characterise other parties interfacing with ATS operations.	2	*Optional content: familiarisation visits to engineering services, fire and emergency services, airline operations offices*	ALL

Subtopic PEN 2.2 - Contributors to military ATS operations

ACP PEN 2.2.1	Characterise military ATS activities.	2	*Optional content: familiarisation visits to TWR, APP, ACC, AIS, RCC, Air Defence Units*	ALL

TOPIC PEN 3 - CUSTOMER RELATIONS

Subtopic PEN 3.1 - Provision of services and user requirements

ACP PEN 3.1.1	Identify the role of ATC as a service provider.	3		ALL
ACP PEN 3.1.2	Appreciate ATS users requirements.	3		ALL

TOPIC PEN 4 - ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Subtopic PEN 4.1 - Environmental protection

ACP PEN 4.1.1	Appreciate the mitigation techniques used en-route to minimise the aviation's impact on the environment.	3	*Optional content: free route airspace (FRA), night/weekend routes, ICAO Circular 303 - Operational opportunities to minimize fuel use and reduce emissions*	ACP ACS

SUBJECT 10: ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall develop professional attitudes to manage traffic in abnormal and emergency situations.

TOPIC ABES 1 - ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS (ABES)

Subtopic ABES 1.1 - Overview of ABES

ACP ABES 1.1.1	List common abnormal and emergency situations.	1	*Optional content: EATM Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations, ambulance flights, ground based safety nets alerts, airframe failure, unreliable instruments, runway incursion*	ALL
ACP ABES 1.1.2	Identify potential or actual abnormal and emergency situations.	3		ALL
ACP ABES 1.1.3	Take into account the procedures for given abnormal and emergency situations.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Doc 4444*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACP ABES 1.1.4	Take into account that procedures do not exist for all abnormal and emergency situations.	2	*Optional content: real life examples*	ALL
ACP ABES 1.1.5	Consider how the evolution of a situation may have an impact on safety.	2	*Optional content: separation, information, coordination*	ALL

TOPIC ABES 2 - SKILLS IMPROVEMENT

Subtopic ABES 2.1 - Communication effectiveness

ACP ABES 2.1.1	Ensure effective communication in all circumstances including the case where standard phraseology is not applicable.	4	Phraseology, vocabulary, readback, silence instruction	ALL
ACP ABES 2.1.2	Apply change of radiotelephony call sign.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL

Subtopic ABES 2.2 - Avoidance of mental overload				
ACP ABES 2.2.1	Describe actions to keep control of the situation.	2	*Optional content: sector splitting, holding, flow management, task delegation*	ALL
ACP ABES 2.2.2	Organise priority of actions.	4		ALL
ACP ABES 2.2.3	Ensure effective circulation of information.	4	*Optional content: between executive and planner/coordinator, with the supervisor, between sectors, between ACC, APP and TWR , with ground staff, etc.*	ALL
ACP ABES 2.2.4	Consider asking for help.	2		ALL
Subtopic ABES 2.3 - Air / ground cooperation				
ACP ABES 2.3.1	Collect appropriate information relevant to the situation.	3		ALL
ACP ABES 2.3.2	Assist the pilot.	3	Pilot workload *Optional content: instructions, information, support, human factors, etc.*	ALL
TOPIC ABES 3 - PROCEDURES FOR ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS				
Subtopic ABES 3.1 - Application of procedures for ABES				
ACP ABES 3.1.1	Apply the procedures for given abnormal and emergency situations.	3	*Optional content: EATM Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations, ambulance flights, ground based safety nets alerts, airframe failure*	ALL
Subtopic ABES 3.2 - Radio failure				
ACP ABES 3.2.1	Describe the procedures followed by a pilot when he/she experiences complete or partial radio failure.	2	ICAO Doc 7030 *Optional content: military procedures*	ALL
ACP ABES 3.2.2	Apply the procedures to be followed when a pilot experiences complete or partial radio failure.	3	*Optional content: prolonged loss of communication*	ALL

Subtopic ABES 3.3 - Unlawful interference and aircraft bomb threat				
ACP ABES 3.3.1	Apply ATC procedures associated with unlawful interference and aircraft bomb threat.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
Subtopic ABES 3.4 - Strayed or unidentified aircraft				
ACP ABES 3.4.1	Apply the procedures in the case of strayed aircraft.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: inside controlled airspace, outside controlled airspace*	ALL
ACP ABES 3.4.2	Apply the procedures in the case of unidentified aircraft.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
Subtopic ABES 3.5 - Diversions				
ACP ABES 3.5.1	Provide navigational assistance to diverting emergency aircraft.	4	Track/heading, distance, other navigational assistance *Optional content: nearest most suitable aerodrome*	APP ACP APS ACS

www.eurocontrol.int

Network Manager
nominated by
the European Commission

EUROCONTROL

EUROCONTROL Specification

EUROCONTROL Specifications for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training

Annex 6: Approach Control Surveillance Rating - APS

Edition: 2.0
Edition date: 02/04/2015
Reference Number: EUROCONTROL-SPEC-157

EUROPEAN ORGANISATION
FOR THE SAFETY OF AIR NAVIGATION

EUROCONTROL

EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training

Annex 6 Approach Control Surveillance Rating APS

Edition Number	:	2.0
Edition Date	:	02/04/2015
Status	:	Released Issue
Intended for	:	NMD Stakeholders

NETWORK MANAGER DIRECTORATE

Page intentionally left blank

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Annex 6 of the EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training V2.0 details the training objectives for the **Rating ATC training: Approach Control Surveillance**.

For training organisations providing ATCO training to meet the requirements laid down in the **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340 laying down technical requirements and administrative procedures relating to air traffic controllers' licences and certificates**, and the acceptable means of compliance (AMCs) associated with the regulation, this syllabus does not change any of the content in the regulation, but rather provides a document that combines the relevant elements into a familiar user format. For European organisations not required to comply with EU legislation, it provides an **Approach Control Surveillance Rating training syllab**us that retains references to ICAO documentation.

Rating training is defined ***as theoretical and practical training designed to impart knowledge and practical skills related to a specific rating and, if applicable, rating endorsement.***

The composition and topics were chosen based on the **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340** Annex I — Rating training (Reference: Annex I — Part ATCO Subpart D, Section 2, ATCO.D.010(a)(2)(v)) and ICAO Annex 1 requirements for an Air Traffic Control licence. The structure of the syllabus reflects a logical grouping of objectives into coherent subjects.

The order of subjects and objectives is neither intended to convey a pedagogical sequence nor to indicate a relative level of importance. No recommendation is made in this area. When teaching the objectives, it is envisaged that different training methodologies will be used.

Prior to developing or updating the **APS Rating training course,** training providers must be familiar with the information contained in the EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training V2.0, particularly Section 6 (How to use this document) which contains, amongst other items, the fundamental principles that are applied to the Specification.

Page intentionally left blank

Contents

Page intentionally left blank

SUBJECT 1: INTRODUCTION TO THE COURSE

The subject objective is:

Learners shall know and understand the training programme that they will follow and learn how to obtain the appropriate information.

TOPIC INTR 1 - COURSE MANAGEMENT

Subtopic INTR 1.1 - Course introduction				
APS INTR 1.1.1	Explain the aims and main objectives of the course.	2		ALL
Subtopic INTR 1.2 - Course administration				
APS INTR 1.2.1	State course administration.	1		ALL
Subtopic INTR 1.3 - Study material and training documentation				
APS INTR 1.3.1	Use appropriate documentation and their sources for course studies.	3	*Optional content: training documentation, library, CBT library, web, learning management server*	ALL
APS INTR 1.3.2	Integrate appropriate information into course studies.	4	Training documentation *Optional content: supplementary information, library*	ALL

TOPIC INTR 2 - INTRODUCTION TO THE ATC TRAINING COURSE

Subtopic INTR 2.1 - Course content and organisation				
APS INTR 2.1.1	State the different training methods applied in the course.	1	Theoretical training, practical training, self-study, types of training events	ALL
APS INTR 2.1.2	State the subjects of the course and their purpose.	1		ALL
APS INTR 2.1.3	Describe the organisation of theoretical training.	2	*Optional content: course programme*	ALL
APS INTR 2.1.4	Describe the organisation of practical training.	2	*Optional content: PTP, simulation, briefing, debriefing, course programme*	ALL

Subtopic INTR 2.2 - Training ethos				
APS INTR 2.2.1	Recognise the feedback mechanisms available.	1	Training progress, assessment, briefing, debriefing, learner/instructor feedback, instructor/instructor feedback	ALL
Subtopic INTR 2.3 - Assessment process				
APS INTR 2.3.1	Describe the assessment process.	2		ALL

SUBJECT 2: AVIATION LAW

The subject objective is:

Learners shall know, understand and apply the Rules of the Air and the Regulations regarding reporting, airspace and appreciate the Licensing and Competence principles.

TOPIC LAW 1 - ATCO LICENSING/CERTIFICATE OF COMPETENCE

Subtopic LAW 1.1 - Privileges and conditions				
APS LAW 1.1.1	Appreciate the conditions which shall be met to issue an Approach Control Surveillance rating.	3	Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on ATCO Licensing ICAO Annex 1 *Optional content: national documents*	APS
APS LAW 1.1.2	Explain how to maintain and update professional knowledge and skills to retain competence in the operational environment.	2		ALL
APS LAW 1.1.3	Explain the conditions for suspension/revocation of ATCO licence.	2	Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on ATCO Licensing ICAO Annex 1	ALL

TOPIC LAW 2 - RULES AND REGULATIONS

Subtopic LAW 2.1 - Reports				
APS LAW 2.1.1	List the standard forms for reports.	1	Air traffic incident report *Optional content: routine air reports, breach of regulations, watch/log book, records*	ALL
APS LAW 2.1.2	Describe the functions of, and processes for, reporting.	2	Reporting culture, air traffic incident report *Optional content: breach of regulations, watch/log book, records, voluntary reporting, ESARR 2*	ALL
APS LAW 2.1.3	Use forms for reporting.	3	Regulation (EU) No 376/2014, air traffic incident reporting form(s) ICAO Doc 4444 Appendix 4, air traffic incident reporting form(s) *Optional content: routine air reports, breach of regulations, watch/log book, records*	ALL

Subtopic LAW 2.2 - Airspace				
APS LAW 2.2.1	Appreciate classes and structure of airspace and their relevance to Approach Control Surveillance rating operations.	3		APS
APS LAW 2.2.2	Provide planning, coordination and control actions appropriate to the airspace classification and structure.	4	*Optional content: Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 2, ICAO Annex 11, international requirements, civil requirements, military requirements, areas of responsibility, sectorization, national requirements*	ALL
APS LAW 2.2.3	Appreciate responsibility for terrain clearance.	3		ALL

TOPIC LAW 3 - ATC SAFETY MANAGEMENT

Subtopic LAW 3.1 - Feedback process				
APS LAW 3.1.1	State the importance of controller contribution to the feedback process.	1	*Optional content: voluntary reporting*	ALL
APS LAW 3.1.2	Describe how reported occurrences are analysed.	2	*Optional content: ESARR 2, local procedures*	ALL
APS LAW 3.1.3	Name the means used to disseminate recommendations.	1	*Optional content: safety letters, safety boards web pages*	ALL
APS LAW 3.1.4	Appreciate the 'Just Culture' concept.	3	Benefits, prerequisites, constraints *Optional content: EAM 2 GUI 6, GAIN Report*	ALL
Subtopic LAW 3.2 - Safety Investigation				
APS LAW 3.2.1	Describe role and mission of Safety Investigation in the improvement of safety.	2		ALL
APS LAW 3.2.2	Define working methods of Safety Investigation.	1		ALL

SUBJECT 3: AIR TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall manage air traffic to ensure safe, orderly and expeditious services.

TOPIC ATM 1 - PROVISION OF SERVICES

Subtopic ATM 1.1 - Air traffic control (ATC) service				
APS ATM 1.1.1	Appreciate own area of responsibility.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 1.1.2	Provide approach control service.	4	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 7030, ICAO Doc 4444, operation manuals ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 7030, ICAO Doc 4444, operation manuals	APP APS
Subtopic ATM 1.2 - Flight information service (FIS)				
APS ATM 1.2.1	Provide FIS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	*ALL*
APS ATM 1.2.2	Use ATS surveillance system for the provision of FIS.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, information to identified aircraft concerning: traffic, navigation *Optional content: weather*	APS ACS
APS ATM 1.2.3	Issue appropriate information concerning the location of conflicting traffic.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, traffic information, essential traffic information	APS ACS *APP* *ACP*
APS ATM 1.2.4	Appreciate the use of ATIS for the provision of flight information service by approach controller.	3		APS *APP*

Subtopic ATM 1.3 - Alerting service (ALRS)				
APS ATM 1.3.1	Provide ALRS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
APS ATM 1.3.2	Respond to distress and urgency messages and signals.	3	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 10, ICAO Doc 4444 ICAO Annex 10, ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: EUROCONTROL Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations*	ALL
APS ATM 1.3.3	Use ATS surveillance system for the provision of ALRS.	3		APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 1.4 - ATS system capacity and air traffic flow management				
APS ATM 1.4.1	Appreciate principles of ATS system capacity and air traffic flow management.	3	*Optional content: EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual, FABs, FUA, free flight, etc.*	APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 1.4.2	Apply flow management procedures in the provision of ATC.	3	*Optional content: EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual*	APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 1.4.3	Organise traffic flows and patterns to take account of airspace boundaries.	4	*Optional content: civil and military, controlled, uncontrolled, advisory, restricted, danger, prohibited, special rules, sector boundaries, national boundaries, FIR boundaries, delegated airspace, transfer of control, transfer of communications, en-route, off-route*	APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 1.4.4	Organise traffic flows and patterns to take account of areas of responsibility.	4	*Optional content: EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual*	APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic ATM 1.4 - ATS system capacity and air traffic flow management				
APS ATM 1.4.5	Inform supervisor of situation.	3	*Optional content: abnormal situations, decrease in sector capacity, limitations on systems and equipment, changes in workload/capacity, unusual meteorological conditions, relevant information like: reported ground-based incidents, forest fire, smoke, oil pollution*	APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 1.4.6	Organise traffic flows and patterns to take account of ATS surveillance system capability.	4		APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 1.5 - Airspace management (ASM)				
APS ATM 1.5.1	Appreciate the principles and means of ASM.	3	Regulation (EC) No 551/2004, Regulation (EC) 2150/2005, Regulation (EC) No 730/2006 EUROCONTROL ASM HBK - Airspace Management Handbook for the application of FUA *Optional content: FABs, EUROCONTROL Specification for the application of FUA, TSAs, CDRs, CBAs*	APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 1.5.2	Organise traffic to take account of ASM.	4	Real-time activation, deactivation or reallocation of airspace *Optional content: CDR, TSA, TRA, CBA*	APS *ACS*

TOPIC ATM 2 - COMMUNICATION

Subtopic ATM 2.1 - Effective communication				
APS ATM 2.1.1	Use approved phraseology.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: ICAO Doc 9432 RTF manual, standard words and phrases as contained in ICAO Annex 10 Vol. 2*	ALL
APS ATM 2.1.2	Ensure effective communication.	4	Communication techniques, readback/verification of readback	ALL

TOPIC ATM 3 - ATC CLEARANCES AND ATC INSTRUCTIONS

Subtopic ATM 3.1 - ATC clearances				
APS ATM 3.1.1	Issue appropriate ATC clearances.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
APS ATM 3.1.2	Integrate appropriate ATC clearances in control service.	4		ALL
APS ATM 3.1.3	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL
Subtopic ATM 3.2 - ATC instructions				
APS ATM 3.2.1	Issue appropriate ATC instructions.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
APS ATM 3.2.2	Integrate appropriate ATC instructions in control service.	4		ALL
APS ATM 3.2.3	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL

TOPIC ATM 4 - COORDINATION

Subtopic ATM 4.1 - Necessity for coordination				
APS ATM 4.1.1	Identify the need for coordination.	3		ALL
Subtopic ATM 4.2 - Tools and methods for coordination				
APS ATM 4.2.1	Use the available tools for coordination.	3	*Optional content: electronic transfer of flight data, telephone, interphone, intercom, direct speech, radiotelephone (RTF), local agreements, automated system coordination*	ALL

Subtopic ATM 4.3 - Coordination procedures				
APS ATM 4.3.1	Initiate appropriate coordination.	3	Delegation/transfer of responsibility for air-ground communications and separation, transfer of control, etc. ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: release point*	ALL
APS ATM 4.3.2	Analyse effect of coordination requested by an adjacent position/unit.	4	*Optional content: delegation/transfer of responsibility for air-ground communications and separation, release point, transfer of control, etc.*	ALL
APS ATM 4.3.3	Select, after negotiation, an appropriate course of action.	5		ALL
APS ATM 4.3.4	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL
APS ATM 4.3.5	Coordinate in the provision of FIS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
APS ATM 4.3.6	Coordinate in the provision of ALRS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL

TOPIC ATM 5 - ALTIMETRY AND LEVEL ALLOCATION

Subtopic ATM 5.1 - Altimetry				
APS ATM 5.1.1	Allocate levels according to altimetry data.	4	ICAO Doc 8168, ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
APS ATM 5.1.2	Ensure separation according to altimetry data.	4	*Optional content: transition level, transition altitude, transition layer, height, flight level, altitude, vertical distance to airspace boundaries*	ALL
Subtopic ATM 5.2 - Terrain clearance				
APS ATM 5.2.1	Provide planning, coordination and control actions appropriate to the rules for minimum safe levels and terrain clearance.	4	*Optional content: minimum vectoring altitude, terrain clearance dimensions, minimum safe altitudes, transition level, minimum flight level, minimum sector altitude*	APS ACS

TOPIC ATM 6 - SEPARATIONS

Subtopic ATM 6.1 - Vertical separation				
APS ATM 6.1.1	Provide standard vertical separation.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030, level allocation, during climb/descent, rate of climb/descent, holding pattern	APP APS
APS ATM 6.1.2	Provide increased vertical separation.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030 *Optional content: level allocation, during climb/descent, rate of climb/descent*	APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 6.1.3	Appreciate the application of vertical emergency separation.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030	APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 6.1.4	Provide vertical separation in a surveillance environment.	4	Pressure altitude-derived information, pilot level reports *Optional content: into/out of ATS surveillance system coverage*	APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 6.2 - Longitudinal separation in a surveillance environment				
APS ATM 6.2.1	Provide longitudinal separation in a surveillance environment.	4	Successive departures, successive arrivals, overflights, speed control, silent transfer, ICAO Doc 4444	APS
Subtopic ATM 6.3 - Delegation of separation				
APS ATM 6.3.1	Delegate separation to pilots in the case of aircraft executing successive visual approaches.	4		APP APS
APS ATM 6.3.2	Appreciate the conditions which must be met when delegating separation to pilots to fly maintaining own separation while in VMC.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	APP APS
Subtopic ATM 6.4 - Wake turbulence distance-based separation				
APS ATM 6.4.1	Provide distance-based wake turbulence separation.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	APS *ACS*

Subtopic ATM 6.5 - Separation based on ATS surveillance systems				
APS ATM 6.5.1	Describe how separation based on ATS surveillance systems is applied.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	APS *ACS*
APS ATM 6.5.2	Provide horizontal separation.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030, local operation manuals, holding	APS *ACS*
APS ATM 6.5.3	Provide horizontal separation by vectoring in a variety of situations.	4	*Optional content: transit, meteorological phenomena, vectoring for approach, departure vs transit vs arrival*	APS *ACS*
APS ATM 6.5.4	Ensure horizontal or vertical separation from airspace boundaries.	4	Adjacent sectors, PRD, TSAs.	APS *ACS*
TOPIC ATM 7 - AIRBORNE COLLISION AVOIDANCE SYSTEMS AND GROUND-BASED SAFETY NETS				
Subtopic ATM 7.1 - Airborne collision avoidance systems				
APS ATM 7.1.1	Differentiate between ACAS advisory thresholds and separation standards applicable in the approach control environment.	2	ICAO Doc 9863 *Optional content: EUROCONTROL TCAS web page*	APP APS
APS ATM 7.1.2	Describe the controller responsibility during and following an ACAS RA reported by pilot.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
APS ATM 7.1.3	Respond to pilot notification of actions based on airborne systems warnings.	3	ACAS, TAWS *Optional content: EUROCONTROL ACAS web page*	ALL
Subtopic ATM 7.2 - Ground-based safety nets				
APS ATM 7.2.1	Describe the controller responsibility during and following safety net warnings.	2	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: STCA, MSAW, APW, APM*	APS ACS
APS ATM 7.2.2	Respond to ground-based safety net warnings.	3	*Optional content: STCA, MSAW, APW, APM*	APS ACS

TOPIC ATM 8 - DATA DISPLAY

Subtopic ATM 8.1 - Data management				
APS ATM 8.1.1	Update the data display to accurately reflect the traffic situation.	3	*Optional content: information displayed, strip marking procedures, electronic information data displays, actions based on traffic display information, calculation of EETs*	ALL
APS ATM 8.1.2	Analyse pertinent data on data displays.	4		ALL
APS ATM 8.1.3	Organise pertinent data on data displays.	4		ALL
APS ATM 8.1.4	Obtain flight plan information.	3	CPL, FPL, supplementary information *Optional content: RPL, AFIL, etc.*	ALL
APS ATM 8.1.5	Use flight plan information.	3		ALL

TOPIC ATM 9 - OPERATIONAL ENVIRONMENT (SIMULATED)

Subtopic ATM 9.1 - Integrity of the operational environment				
APS ATM 9.1.1	Obtain information concerning the operational environment.	3	*Optional content: briefing, notices, local orders, verification of information*	ALL
APS ATM 9.1.2	Ensure the integrity of the operational environment.	4	*Optional content: integrity of displays, verification of the information provided by displays, etc.*	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 9.2 - Verification of the currency of operational procedures				
APS ATM 9.2.1	Check all relevant documentation before managing traffic.	3	*Optional content: briefing, LOAs, NOTAM, AICs*	ALL
APS ATM 9.2.2	Manage traffic in accordance with procedural changes.	4		APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic ATM 9.3 - Handover-takeover				
APS ATM 9.3.1	Transfer information to the relieving controller.	3		ALL
APS ATM 9.3.2	Obtain information from the controller handing over.	3		ALL

TOPIC ATM 10 - PROVISION OF CONTROL SERVICE

Subtopic ATM 10.1 - Responsibility and processing of information				
APS ATM 10.1.1	Describe the division of responsibility between air traffic control units.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	*ALL*
APS ATM 10.1.2	Describe the responsibility in regard to military traffic.	2	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: ICAO Doc 9554*	*ALL*
APS ATM 10.1.3	Describe the responsibility in regard to unmanned free balloons.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 10.1.4	Obtain operational information.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, local operation manuals	APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 10.1.5	Interpret operational information.	5		APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 10.1.6	Organise forwarding of operational information.	4	*Optional content: including the use of backup procedures*	APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 10.1.7	Integrate operational information into control decisions.	4		APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 10.1.8	Appreciate the influence of operational requirements.	3	*Optional content: military flying, calibration flights, aerial photography*	*ALL*

Subtopic ATM 10.2 - ATS surveillance service				
APS ATM 10.2.1	Explain the responsibility for the provision of an ATS surveillance service appropriate to APS rating.	2	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Annex 11, local operation manuals	APS
APS ATM 10.2.2	Explain the functions that may be performed with the use of ATS surveillance systems derived information presented on a situation display.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	APS *ACS*
APS ATM 10.2.3	Provide planning, coordination and control actions appropriate to the VFR, SVFR and IFR in VMC and IMC.	4	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 4444 ICAO Annex 2, ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 4444	APS APP
APS ATM 10.2.4	Apply the procedures for termination of ATS surveillance service.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: transfer of control, termination or interruption of ATS surveillance service*	APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 10.3 - Traffic management process				
APS ATM 10.3.1	Ensure that situational awareness is maintained.	4	Information gathering, scanning, traffic projection	APS ACS
APS ATM 10.3.2	Detect conflicts in time for appropriate resolution.	4		ALL
APS ATM 10.3.3	Identify potential solutions to achieve a safe and effective traffic flow.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 10.3.4	Evaluate possible outcomes of different planning and control actions.	5		APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 10.3.5	Select an appropriate plan in time to achieve safe and effective traffic flow.	5		APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 10.3.6	Ensure an adequate priority of actions.	4		*ALL*
APS ATM 10.3.7	Execute selected plan in a timely manner.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 10.3.8	Ensure a safe and efficient outcome is achieved.	4	Traffic monitoring, adaptability and follow up	ALL

Subtopic ATM 10.4 - Handling traffic				
APS ATM 10.4.1	Manage arrivals, departures and overflights.	4		APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 10.4.2	Balance the workload against personal capacity.	5	*Optional content: re-routing, re-planning, prioritising solutions, denying requests, delegating responsibility for separation*	APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 10.4.3	Define flight path monitoring and vectoring.	1	ICAO Doc 4444	APS ACS
APS ATM 10.4.4	Explain the requirements for vectoring and termination of vectoring.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	APS ACS
APS ATM 10.4.5	Provide vectoring.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: separation, expediting arrivals, departures and/or climb to cruising levels, aircraft leaving the hold, navigation assistance, uncontrolled airspace, etc.*	APS ACS
APS ATM 10.4.6	Apply the procedures for termination of vectoring.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	APS ACS
APS ATM 10.4.7	Manage traffic on different types of approaches.	4	Precision, non-precision, visual	*APP* APS
APS ATM 10.4.8	Initiate missed approach.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	*APP* APS
APS ATM 10.4.9	Integrate aircraft on missed approach into the traffic situation.	4		*APP* APS
Subtopic ATM 10.5 - Control service with advanced system support				
APS ATM 10.5.1	Appreciate the impact of advanced systems on the provision of approach control service.	3	*Optional content: sequencing systems, arrival management, departure management, automated holding lists, vertical traffic displays, conflict detection and decision making tools, automated information and coordination tools*	APS

TOPIC ATM 11 - HOLDING

Subtopic ATM 11.1 - General holding procedures

APS ATM 11.1.1	Apply holding procedures.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, holding instructions, allocation of holding levels, onward clearance times	APP ACP APS ACS
APS ATM 11.1.2	Appreciate the factors affecting holding patterns.	3	Effect of speed, effect of level used, effect of navigation aid in use, turbulence, aircraft type	APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic ATM 11.2 - Approaching aircraft

APS ATM 11.2.1	Calculate Expected Approach Times (EATs) and Expected Onward Clearance times.	3		APP APS
APS ATM 11.2.2	Organise the traffic landing sequence in a holding pattern.	4	*Optional content: company preference, aircraft performance, aircraft approach capability, ILS categories, flow control management*	APP APS

Subtopic ATM 11.3 - Holding in a surveillance environment

APS ATM 11.3.1	Organise traffic to separate other aircraft from holding aircraft.	4		APS ACS
APS ATM 11.3.2	Integrate system support, when available.	4	*Optional content: arrival management system, automated holding lists, vertical traffic displays*	APS ACS

TOPIC ATM 12 - IDENTIFICATION

Subtopic ATM 12.1 - Establishment of identification

APS ATM 12.1.1	Appreciate the precautions when establishing identification.	3		APS ACS
APS ATM 12.1.2	Identify aircraft.	3	*Optional content: PSR, SSR or ADS identification method*	APS ACS
APS ATM 12.1.3	Apply procedures in the case of misidentification.	3		APS ACS

Subtopic ATM 12.2 - Maintenance of identification				
APS ATM 12.2.1	Appreciate the necessity to maintain identification.	3		APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 12.3 - Loss of identity				
APS ATM 12.3.1	Appreciate when an aircraft identification is lost or in doubt.	3	*Optional content: out of ATS surveillance system coverage, failure of ATS surveillance system, weather clutter, other clutter, garbling, holding, etc.*	APS ACS
APS ATM 12.3.2	Apply methods to re-establish identification.	3		APS ACS
APS ATM 12.3.3	Respond to loss/doubt concerning identification.	3	*Optional content: procedural separation*	APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 12.4 - Position Information				
APS ATM 12.4.1	Appreciate the circumstances when position information should be passed to the aircraft.	3		APS ACS
APS ATM 12.4.2	State the format in which position information can be passed to aircraft.	1	ICAO Doc 4444	APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 12.5 - Transfer of identity				
APS ATM 12.5.1	Apply the methods of transfer of identification.	3		APS ACS
APS ATM 12.5.2	Appreciate the precautions when transferring identification.	3		APS ACS

SUBJECT 4: METEOROLOGY

The subject objective is:

Learners shall acquire, decode and make proper use of meteorological information relevant to the provision of ATS.

TOPIC MET 1 - METEOROLOGICAL PHENOMENA

Subtopic MET 1.1 - Meteorological phenomena

APS MET 1.1.1	Appreciate the impact of adverse weather.	3	Thunderstorms, icing, clear air turbulence (CAT), turbulence, microburst, wind shear, severe mountain waves, line squalls, volcanic ash	APP APS
APS MET 1.1.2	Integrate data about meteorological phenomena into provision of ATS.	4	Clearances, instructions and transmitted information *Optional content: relevant meteorological phenomena*	*ALL*
APS MET 1.1.3	Use techniques to avoid adverse weather when necessary/possible.	3	Re-routing, level change, etc.	APP ACP APS ACS

TOPIC MET 2 - SOURCES OF METEOROLOGICAL DATA

Subtopic MET 2.1 - Sources of meteorological information

APS MET 2.1.1	Obtain meteorological information	3	METAR, TAF, SIGMET, AIRMET *Optional content: AIREP/AIREP Special*	APP ACP APS ACS
APS MET 2.1.2	Relay meteorological information.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: flight information centre, adjacent ATS unit*	*ALL*

SUBJECT 5: NAVIGATION

The subject objective is:

Learners shall analyse all navigational aspects in order to organise the traffic.

TOPIC NAV 1 - MAPS AND AERONAUTICAL CHARTS

Subtopic NAV 1.1 - Maps and charts

APS NAV 1.1.1	Decode symbols and information displayed on aeronautical maps and charts.	3	Instrument approach charts, SID charts, aerodrome charts, visual approach charts *Optional content: military maps and charts*	ADI APP APS
APS NAV 1.1.2	Use relevant maps and charts.	3		APP *ACP* APS *ACS*

TOPIC NAV 2 - INSTRUMENT NAVIGATION

Subtopic NAV 2.1 - Navigational systems

APS NAV 2.1.1	Manage traffic in case of change in the operational status of navigational systems.	4	*Optional content: limitations, status of ground-based and satellite-based systems*	APP ACP APS ACS
APS NAV 2.1.2	Appreciate the effect of precision, limitations and change of the operational status of navigational systems.	3	*Optional content: limitations, status, degraded procedures*	*ALL*

Subtopic NAV 2.2 - Stabilised approach

APS NAV 2.2.1	Describe the concept of stabilised approach.	2	ICAO Doc 8168 *Optional content: SKYbrary, Regulation (EC) No 1899/2006*	ADV ADI APP APS
APS NAV 2.2.2	Appreciate the effect of late change of runway-in-use or type of approach for landing aircraft.	3		APP APS

Subtopic NAV 2.2 - Stabilised approach				
APS NAV 2.2.3	Appreciate controller actions that may contribute to unstabilised approach.	3	Inappropriate speed control, vectoring for short final, vectoring for approach with significant tailwind, glide path interception from above, lack or incorrect distance to touchdown information, delayed descent	APS
Subtopic NAV 2.3 - Instrument departures and arrivals				
APS NAV 2.3.1	Characterise SIDs.	2		ADI APP APS
APS NAV 2.3.2	Describe the types and phases of instrument approach procedures.	2		APP APS
APS NAV 2.3.3	Describe the relevant minima applicable for a precision/ non-precision and visual approach.	2		ADI APP APS
Subtopic NAV 2.4 - Navigational assistance				
APS NAV 2.4.1	Evaluate the necessary information to be provided to pilots in need of navigational assistance.	5	*Optional content: nearest most suitable aerodrome, track, heading, distance, aerodrome information, any other navigational assistance relevant at the time*	APP *ACP* APS *ACS*
APS NAV 2.4.2	Assist aircraft in navigation when required.	3	Aircraft observed to be deviating from its known intended route, on request	APS *ACS*
Subtopic NAV 2.5 - Satellite-based systems				
APS NAV 2.5.1	State the different applications of satellite-based systems relevant for approach operations.	1	*Optional content: NPA, APV-baro VNAV, APV, LPV, precision approach, ICAO Doc 8168 Vol.2*	APP APS

Subtopic NAV 2.6 - PBN applications				
APS NAV 2.6.1	State the navigation applications used in approach and terminal environments.	1	Approach-RNP APCH/ RNP AR APCH; Terminal-RNAV-1 (≈P-RNAV) *Optional content: A-RNP, EU PBN Implementing Rule, ICAO Doc 9613*	APP APS
APS NAV 2.6.2	Explain the principles and designation of navigation specifications in use.	2	*Optional content: performance, functionality, sensors, aircrew and controller requirements*	APP *ACP* APS *ACS*
APS NAV 2.6.3	State future PBN developments.	1	A-RNP, APV *Optional content: RNP 3D, RNP 4D*	*ADI* APP *ACP* APS *ACS*

SUBJECT 6: AIRCRAFT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall assess and integrate aircraft performance in the provision of ATS.

TOPIC ACFT 1 - AIRCRAFT INSTRUMENTS

Subtopic ACFT 1.1 - Aircraft instruments

APS ACFT 1.1.1	Integrate information from aircraft instruments provided by the pilot in the provision of ATS.	4		ALL
APS ACFT 1.1.2	Explain the operation of aircraft radio equipment.	2	*Optional content: radios (number of), emergency radios*	ALL
APS ACFT 1.1.3	Explain the operation of on-board surveillance equipment.	2	Transponders: equipment Mode A, Mode C, Mode S, ADS capability	ADI APS ACS

TOPIC ACFT 2 - AIRCRAFT CATEGORIES

Subtopic ACFT 2.1 - Wake turbulence

APS ACFT 2.1.1	Explain the wake turbulence effect and associated hazards to the succeeding aircraft.	2		ALL
APS ACFT 2.1.2	Appreciate the techniques used to prevent hazards associated with wake turbulence on succeeding aircraft.	3		ALL

Subtopic ACFT 2.2 - Application of ICAO approach categories

APS ACFT 2.2.1	Describe the use of ICAO approach categories.	2	ICAO Doc 8168	ADI APP APS
APS ACFT 2.2.2	Appreciate the effect of ICAO approach categories on the traffic organisation.	3		ADI APP APS

TOPIC ACFT 3 - FACTORS AFFECTING AIRCRAFT PERFORMANCE

Subtopic ACFT 3.1 - Climb factors				
APS ACFT 3.1.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during climb.	4	*Optional content: speed, mass, air density, cabin pressurisation, wind and temperature*	APP ACP APS ACS
APS ACFT 3.1.2	Appreciate the influence of factors affecting aircraft on take-off.	3	*Optional content: runway conditions, runway slope, aerodrome elevation, wind, temperature, aircraft configuration, airframe contamination and aircraft mass*	APP APS
Subtopic ACFT 3.2 - Cruise factors				
APS ACFT 3.2.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during cruise.	4	Level, cruising speed, wind, mass, cabin pressurisation	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic ACFT 3.3 - Descent and initial approach factors				
APS ACFT 3.3.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during descent.	4	*Optional content: wind, speed, rate of descent, aircraft configuration, cabin pressurisation*	APP APS
Subtopic ACFT 3.4 - Final approach and landing factors				
APS ACFT 3.4.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during final approach and landing.	4	*Optional content: wind, aircraft configuration, mass, meteorological conditions, runway conditions, runway slope, aerodrome elevation*	APP APS
Subtopic ACFT 3.5 - Economic factors				
APS ACFT 3.5.1	Integrate consideration of economic factors affecting aircraft.	4	*Optional content: routing, level, speed, rate of climb and rate of descent, approach profile*	APP APS
APS ACFT 3.5.2	Use continuous climb techniques where applicable.	3		APP *ACP* APS *ACS*
APS ACFT 3.5.3	Use direct routing where applicable.	3		APP *ACP* APS *ACS*

Subtopic ACFT 3.6 - Environmental factors				
APS ACFT 3.6.1	Appreciate the performance restrictions due to environmental constraints.	3	*Optional content: fuel dumping, noise abatement procedures, minimum flight levels, bird hazard, continuous descent operations*	APP APS

TOPIC ACFT 4 - AIRCRAFT DATA

Subtopic ACFT 4.1 - Performance data				
APS ACFT 4.1.1	Integrate the average performance data of a representative sample of aircraft which will be encountered in the operational/working environment into the provision of a control service.	4	Performance data under a representative variety of circumstances	APP ACP APS ACS

SUBJECT 7: HUMAN FACTORS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall recognise the necessity to constantly extend their knowledge and analyse factors which affect personal and team performance.

TOPIC HUM 1 - PSYCHOLOGICAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 1.1 - Cognitive				
APS HUM 1.1.1	Describe the human information processing model.	2	Attention, perception, memory, situational awareness, decision making, response	ALL
APS HUM 1.1.2	Describe the factors which influence human information processing.	2	Confidence, stress, learning, knowledge, experience, fatigue, alcohol/drugs, distraction, interpersonal relations	ALL
APS HUM 1.1.3	Monitor the effect of human information processing factors on decision making.	3	*Optional content: workload, stress, interpersonal relations, distraction, confidence*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 2 - MEDICAL AND PHYSIOLOGICAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 2.1 - Fatigue				
APS HUM 2.1.1	State factors that cause fatigue.	1	Shift work *Optional content: night shifts and rosters*	ALL
APS HUM 2.1.2	Describe the onset of fatigue.	2	*Optional content: lack of concentration, listlessness, irritability, frustration, ICAO Circular 241 – AN/145 Human factors in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
APS HUM 2.1.3	Recognise the onset of fatigue in self.	1	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 241 – AN/145 Human factors in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
APS HUM 2.1.4	Recognise the onset of fatigue in others.	1		ALL
APS HUM 2.1.5	Describe appropriate action when recognising fatigue.	2		ALL

Subtopic HUM 2.2 - Fitness				
APS HUM 2.2.1	Recognise signs of lack of personal fitness.	1		ALL
APS HUM 2.2.2	Describe actions when aware of a lack of personal fitness.	2		ALL

TOPIC HUM 3 - SOCIAL AND ORGANISATIONAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 3.1 - Team resource management (TRM)				
APS HUM 3.1.1	State the relevance of TRM.	1	*Optional content: TRM course, EUROCONTROL Guidelines for the development of TRM training*	ALL
APS HUM 3.1.2	State the content of the TRM concept.	1	*Optional content: team work, human error, team roles, stress, decision making, communication, situational awareness*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 3.2 - Teamwork and team roles				
APS HUM 3.2.1	Identify reasons for conflict.	3		ALL
APS HUM 3.2.2	Describe actions to prevent human conflicts.	2	*Optional content: TRM team roles*	ALL
APS HUM 3.2.3	Describe strategies to cope with human conflicts.	2	*Optional content: in your team, in the simulator*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 3.3 - Responsible behaviour				
APS HUM 3.3.1	Consider the factors which influence responsible behaviour.	2	*Optional content: situation, team, personal situation and judgement, instance of justification, moral motivation, personality*	ALL
APS HUM 3.3.2	Apply responsible judgement.	3	Case study and discussion about a dilemma situation	ALL

TOPIC HUM 4 - STRESS

Subtopic HUM 4.1 - Stress				
APS HUM 4.1.1	Recognise the effects of stress on performance.	1	Stress and its symptoms in self and in others	ALL
Subtopic HUM 4.2 - Stress management				
APS HUM 4.2.1	Act to reduce stress.	3	The effect of personality in coping with stress, the benefits of active stress management	ALL
APS HUM 4.2.2	Respond to stressful situation by offering, asking or accepting assistance.	3	*Optional content: the benefits of offering, accepting and asking for help in stressful situations*	ALL
APS HUM 4.2.3	Recognise the effect of shocking and stressful events.	1	Self and others, abnormal situations, CISM	ALL
APS HUM 4.2.4	Consider the benefits of Critical Incident Stress Management (CISM).	2		ALL
APS HUM 4.2.5	Explain procedures used following an incident/accident.	2	*Optional content: CISM, counselling, human element*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 5 - HUMAN ERROR

Subtopic HUM 5.1 - Human error				
APS HUM 5.1.1	Explain the relationship between error and safety.	2	Number and combination of errors, proactive versus reactive approach to discovery of error *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
APS HUM 5.1.2	Differentiate between the types of error.	2	Slips, lapses, mistakes *Optional content: Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL

Subtopic HUM 5.1 - Human error				
APS HUM 5.1.3	Describe error-prone conditions.	2	*Optional content: increase in traffic, changes in procedures, complexities of systems or traffic, weather, unusual occurrences*	ALL
APS HUM 5.1.4	Collect examples of different error types, their causes and consequences in ATC.	3	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
APS HUM 5.1.5	Explain how to detect errors to compensate for them.	2	STCA, MSAW, individual and collective strategy *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
APS HUM 5.1.6	Execute corrective actions.	3	Error compensation *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
APS HUM 5.1.7	Explain the importance of error management.	2	*Optional content: prevention of incidents, safety improvement, revision of procedures and/or working practises*	ALL
APS HUM 5.1.8	Describe the impact on an ATCO following an occurrence/incident.	2	*Optional content: reporting, SMS, investigation, CISM*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 5.2 - Violation of rules				
APS HUM 5.2.1	Explain the causes and dangers of violation of rules becoming accepted as a practice.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 6 - COLLABORATIVE WORK

Subtopic HUM 6.1 - Communication				
APS HUM 6.1.1	Use communication effectively in ATC.	3		ALL
APS HUM 6.1.2	Analyse examples of pilot and controller communication for effectiveness.	4		ALL

Subtopic HUM 6.2 - Collaborative work within the same area of responsibility				
APS HUM 6.2.1	List communication means between controllers in charge of the same area of responsibility (sector or tower).	1	*Optional content: electronic, written, verbal and non-verbal communication*	ALL
APS HUM 6.2.2	Explain consequences of the use of communication means on effectiveness.	2	*Optional content: strips legibility and encoding, labels designation, feedback*	ALL
APS HUM 6.2.3	List possible actions to provide a safe position handover.	1	*Optional content: rigour, preparation, overlap time*	ALL
APS HUM 6.2.4	Explain consequences of a missed position handover process.	2		ALL
Subtopic HUM 6.3 - Collaborative work between different areas of responsibility				
APS HUM 6.3.1	List factors and means for an effective coordination between sectors and/or tower positions.	1	*Optional content: other sectors constraints, electronic coordination tools*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 6.4 - Controller/pilot cooperation				
APS HUM 6.4.1	Describe parameters affecting controller/pilot cooperation.	2	*Optional content: workload, mutual knowledge, controller vs pilot mental picture*	ALL

SUBJECT 8: EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall integrate knowledge and understanding of the basic working principles of equipment and systems and comply with the equipment and system degradation procedures in the provision of ATS.

TOPIC EQPS 1 - VOICE COMMUNICATIONS

Subtopic EQPS 1.1 - Radio communications

APS EQPS 1.1.1	Operate two-way communication equipment.	3	Transmit/receive switches, procedures *Optional content: frequency selection, standby equipment*	ALL
APS EQPS 1.1.2	Identify indications of operational status of radio equipment.	3	*Optional content: indicator lights, serviceability displays, selector/frequency displays*	ALL
APS EQPS 1.1.3	Consider radio range.	2	*Optional content: transfer to another frequency, apparent radio failure, failure to establish radio contact, frequency protection range*	APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic EQPS 1.2 - Other voice communications

APS EQPS 1.2.1	Operate landline communications.	3	*Optional content: telephone, interphone and intercom equipment*	ALL

TOPIC EQPS 2 - AUTOMATION IN ATS

Subtopic EQPS 2.1 - Aeronautical fixed telecommunication network (AFTN)

APS EQPS 2.1.1	Decode AFTN messages.	3	*Optional content: movement and control messages, NOTAM, SNOWTAM, BIRDTAM, etc.*	ALL

Subtopic EQPS 2.2 - Automatic data interchange

APS EQPS 2.2.1	Use automatic data transfer equipment where available.	3	*Optional content: sequencing systems, automated information and coordination, OLDI*	ADV ADI APS ACS

TOPIC EQPS 3 - CONTROLLER WORKING POSITION

Subtopic EQPS 3.1 - Operation and monitoring of equipment				
APS EQPS 3.1.1	Monitor the technical integrity of the controller working position.	3	Notification procedures, responsibilities	ALL
APS EQPS 3.1.2	Operate the equipment of the controller working position.	3	*Optional content: situation displays, flight progress board, flight data display, radio, telephone, maps and charts, strip-printer, clock, information systems, UDF/VDF*	ALL
APS EQPS 3.1.3	Operate available equipment in abnormal and emergency situations.	3		ALL
Subtopic EQPS 3.2 - Situation displays and information systems				
APS EQPS 3.2.1	Use situation displays.	3		ALL
APS EQPS 3.2.2	Check availability of information material.	3		ALL
APS EQPS 3.2.3	Obtain information from equipment.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic EQPS 3.3 - Flight data systems				
APS EQPS 3.3.1	Use the flight data information at controller working position.	3		ALL
Subtopic EQPS 3.4 - Use of ATS surveillance system				
APS EQPS 3.4.1	Use the ATS surveillance system functions.	3		APS ACS
APS EQPS 3.4.2	Analyse the information provided by the ATS surveillance system.	4		APS ACS
APS EQPS 3.4.3	Assign codes.	4		APS ACS
APS EQPS 3.4.4	Appreciate the use of advanced surveillance technology.	3	*Optional content: Mode S, ADS-B, MLAT*	APS ACS

Subtopic EQPS 3.5 - Advanced systems				
APS EQPS 3.5.1	Appreciate the use of controller pilot datalink communications when available.	3		APS ACS
APS EQPS 3.5.2	Appreciate the use of information provided by advanced systems.	3	*Optional content: trajectory-based information, MTCD, MONA, etc.*	APS ACS
TOPIC EQPS 4 - FUTURE EQUIPMENT				
Subtopic EQPS 4.1 - New developments				
APS EQPS 4.1.1	Recognise future developments.	1	New advanced systems	ALL
TOPIC EQPS 5 - EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS LIMITATIONS AND DEGRADATION				
Subtopic EQPS 5.1 - Reaction to limitations				
APS EQPS 5.1.1	Take account of the limitations of equipment and systems.	2		ALL
APS EQPS 5.1.2	Respond to technical deficiencies of the operational position.	3	Notification procedures, responsibilities	ALL
Subtopic EQPS 5.2 - Communication equipment degradation				
APS EQPS 5.2.1	Identify that communication equipment has degraded.	3	*Optional content: ground-air and landline communications*	APP ACP APS ACS
APS EQPS 5.2.2	Apply contingency procedures in the event of communication equipment degradation.	3	Procedures for total or partial degradation of ground-air and landline communications, alternative methods of transferring data	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic EQPS 5.3 - Navigational equipment degradation				
APS EQPS 5.3.1	Identify when a navigational equipment failure will affect operational ability.	3	*Optional content: VOR, navigational aids*	ALL
APS EQPS 5.3.2	Apply contingency procedures in the event of a navigational equipment degradation.	3	*Optional content: vertical separation, information to aircraft, navigational assistance, seeking assistance from adjacent units*	ADI APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic EQPS 5.4 - Surveillance equipment degradation				
APS EQPS 5.4.1	Identify that surveillance equipment has degraded.	3	Partial power failure, loss of certain facilities, total failure	APS ACS
APS EQPS 5.4.2	Apply contingency procedures in the event of surveillance equipment degradation.	3	*Optional content: inform adjacent sectors, inform aircraft, apply vertical separation (emergency), increased horizontal separation, reduce the number of aircraft entering area of responsibility, transfer aircraft to another unit*	APS ACS
Subtopic EQPS 5.5 - ATC processing system degradation				
APS EQPS 5.5.1	Identify a processing system degradation.	3	*Optional content: FDPS, SDPS, software processing of situation display*	APS ACS
APS EQPS 5.5.2	Apply contingency procedures in the event of a processing system degradation.	3		APS ACS

SUBJECT 9: PROFESSIONAL ENVIRONMENT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall identify the need for close cooperation with other parties concerning ATM operations and appreciate aspects of environmental protection.

TOPIC PEN 1 - FAMILIARISATION

Subtopic PEN 1.1 - Study visit to approach control unit

APS PEN 1.1.1	Appreciate the functions and provision of an operational approach control service.	3	Study visit to an approach control unit	APP APS

TOPIC PEN 2 - AIRSPACE USERS

Subtopic PEN 2.1 - Contributors to civil ATS operations

APS PEN 2.1.1	Characterise civil ATS activities in approach control unit.	2	Study visit to an approach control unit *Optional content: familiarisation visits to TWR, ACC, AIS, RCC*	APP APS
APS PEN 2.1.2	Characterise other parties interfacing with ATS operations.	2	*Optional content: familiarisation visits to engineering services, fire and emergency services, airline operations offices*	ALL

Subtopic PEN 2.2 - Contributors to military ATS operations

APS PEN 2.2.1	Characterise military ATS activities.	2	*Optional content: familiarisation visits to TWR, APP, ACC, AIS, RCC, Air Defence Units*	ALL

TOPIC PEN 3 - CUSTOMER RELATIONS

Subtopic PEN 3.1 - Provision of services and user requirements

APS PEN 3.1.1	Identify the role of ATC as a service provider.	3		ALL
APS PEN 3.1.2	Appreciate ATS users requirements.	3		ALL

TOPIC PEN 4 - ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Subtopic PEN 4.1 - Environmental protection

APS PEN 4.1.1	Describe the environmental constraints on aerodrome operations.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 303 - Operational opportunities to minimise fuel use and reduce emissions*	ADV ADI APP APS
APS PEN 4.1.2	Explain the use of Collaborative Environmental Management (CEM) process at airports.	2		ADV ADI APP APS
APS PEN 4.1.3	Appreciate the mitigation techniques used to minimise aviation's impact on the environment.	3	*Optional content: continuous descent operations (CDO), noise abatement procedures, noise preferential routes, flight efficiency*	APP APS

SUBJECT 10: ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall develop professional attitudes to manage traffic in abnormal and emergency situations.

TOPIC ABES 1 - ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS (ABES)

Subtopic ABES 1.1 - Overview of ABES				
APS ABES 1.1.1	List common abnormal and emergency situations.	1	*Optional content: EATM Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations, ambulance flights, ground based safety nets alerts, airframe failure, unreliable instruments, runway incursion*	ALL
APS ABES 1.1.2	Identify potential or actual abnormal and emergency situations.	3		ALL
APS ABES 1.1.3	Take into account the procedures for given abnormal and emergency situations.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Doc 4444*	APP ACP APS ACS
APS ABES 1.1.4	Take into account that procedures do not exist for all abnormal and emergency situations.	2	*Optional content: real life examples*	ALL
APS ABES 1.1.5	Consider how the evolution of a situation may have an impact on safety.	2	*Optional content: separation, information, coordination*	ALL

TOPIC ABES 2 - SKILLS IMPROVEMENT

Subtopic ABES 2.1 - Communication effectiveness				
APS ABES 2.1.1	Ensure effective communication in all circumstances including the case where standard phraseology is not applicable.	4	Phraseology, vocabulary, readback, silence instruction	ALL
APS ABES 2.1.2	Apply change of radiotelephony call sign.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL

Subtopic ABES 2.2 - Avoidance of mental overload				
APS ABES 2.2.1	Describe actions to keep control of the situation.	2	*Optional content: sector splitting, holding, flow management, task delegation*	ALL
APS ABES 2.2.2	Organise priority of actions.	4		ALL
APS ABES 2.2.3	Ensure effective circulation of information.	4	*Optional content: between executive and planner/coordinator, with the supervisor, between sectors, between ACC, APP and TWR, with ground staff, etc.*	ALL
APS ABES 2.2.4	Consider asking for help.	2		ALL
Subtopic ABES 2.3 - Air / ground cooperation				
APS ABES 2.3.1	Collect appropriate information relevant to the situation.	3		ALL
APS ABES 2.3.2	Assist the pilot.	3	Pilot workload *Optional content: instructions, information, support, human factors, etc.*	ALL

TOPIC ABES 3 - PROCEDURES FOR ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS

Subtopic ABES 3.1 - Application of procedures for ABES				
APS ABES 3.1.1	Apply the procedures for given abnormal and emergency situations.	3	*Optional content: EATM Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations, ambulance flights, ground based safety nets alerts, airframe failure*	ALL
Subtopic ABES 3.2 - Radio failure				
APS ABES 3.2.1	Describe the procedures followed by a pilot when he/she experiences complete or partial radio failure.	2	ICAO Doc 7030 *Optional content: military procedures*	ALL
APS ABES 3.2.2	Apply the procedures to be followed when a pilot experiences complete or partial radio failure.	3	*Optional content: prolonged loss of communication*	ALL

Subtopic ABES 3.3 - Unlawful interference and aircraft bomb threat				
APS ABES 3.3.1	Apply ATC procedures associated with unlawful interference and aircraft bomb threat.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
Subtopic ABES 3.4 - Strayed or unidentified aircraft				
APS ABES 3.4.1	Apply the procedures in the case of strayed aircraft.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: inside controlled airspace, outside controlled airspace*	ALL
APS ABES 3.4.2	Apply the procedures in the case of unidentified aircraft.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
Subtopic ABES 3.5 - Diversions				
APS ABES 3.5.1	Provide navigational assistance to diverting emergency aircraft.	4	Track/heading, distance, other navigational assistance *Optional content: nearest most suitable aerodrome*	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic ABES 3.6 - Transponder failure				
APS ABES 3.6.1	Apply procedures in the event of an SSR transponder failure.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030 *Optional content: total/partial failure, impact on ADS-B/Mode S capability*	APS ACS

SUBJECT 11: AERODROMES

The subject objective is:

Learners shall recognise and understand the design and layout of aerodromes.

TOPIC AGA 1 - AERODROME DATA, LAYOUT AND COORDINATION

Subtopic AGA 1.1 - Definitions

APS AGA 1.1.1	Define aerodrome data.	1	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14 *Optional content: aerodrome elevation, reference point, apron, movement area, manoeuvring area, hot spot*	ADV ADI APP APS

Subtopic AGA 1.2 - Coordination

APS AGA 1.2.1	Identify the information that has to be passed between Air Traffic Services (ATS) and the airport authority.	3	Airport conditions, fire/rescue category, condition of ground equipment and NAVAIDs, AIRAC, Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM Airport conditions, Fire/rescue category, Condition of ground equipment and NAVAIDs, AIRAC, ICAO Annex 14	APP APS ADV ADI

TOPIC AGA 2 - MOVEMENT AREA

Subtopic AGA 2.1 - Movement area

APS AGA 2.1.1	Describe movement area.	2	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14	ADV ADI APP APS

Subtopic AGA 2.1 - Movement area				
APS AGA 2.1.2	Describe the marking of obstacles and unusable or unserviceable areas.	2	Flags, signs on pavement, lights	ADV ADI APP APS
APS AGA 2.1.3	Identify the information on conditions of the movement area that have to be passed to aircraft.	3	Essential information on aerodrome conditions	ADV ADI APP APS
Subtopic AGA 2.2 - Manoeuvring area				
APS AGA 2.2.1	Describe manoeuvring area.	2	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14	ADV ADI APP APS
APS AGA 2.2.2	Describe taxiway.	2		ADV ADI APP APS
APS AGA 2.2.3	Describe the daylight marking on taxiways.	2		ADV ADI APP APS
APS AGA 2.2.4	Describe taxiway lighting.	2		ADV ADI APP APS
Subtopic AGA 2.3 - Runways				
APS AGA 2.3.1	Describe runway.	2	Runway, runway surface, runway strip, shoulder, runway end safety areas, clearways, stopways	ADV ADI APP APS
APS AGA 2.3.2	Describe instrument runway.	2	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14	ADI APP APS
APS AGA 2.3.3	Describe non-instrument runway.	2	Regulation (EU) No 139/2014 - EASA ED Decision 2014/013/R for CS-ADR-DSN - Initial issue and EASA ED Decision 2014/012/R for ADR AMC/GM ICAO Annex 14	*ADV* ADI APP APS

Subtopic AGA 2.3 - Runways				
APS AGA 2.3.4	Explain declared distances.	2	TORA, TODA, ASDA, LDA	*ADV* ADI APP APS
APS AGA 2.3.5	Explain the differences between ACN and PCN.	2	Strength of pavements	*ADV* ADI APP APS
APS AGA 2.3.6	Describe the daylight markings on runways.	2	*Optional content: runway designator, centre line, threshold, aiming point, fixed distance, touchdown zone, side strip, colour*	*ADV* ADI APP APS
APS AGA 2.3.7	Describe runway lights.	2	*Optional content: colour, centre line, intensity, edge, touchdown zone, threshold, barettes*	*ADV* ADI APP APS
APS AGA 2.3.8	Explain the functions of visual landing aids.	2	*Optional content: AVASI, VASI, PAPI*	*ADV* ADI APP APS
APS AGA 2.3.9	Describe the approach lighting systems.	2	Centre line, cross bars, stroboscopic lights, colours, intensity and brightness	*ADV* ADI APP APS
APS AGA 2.3.10	Characterise the effect of water/ice on runways.	2		*ADV* ADI APP APS
APS AGA 2.3.11	Explain braking action.	2	Braking action coefficient	*ADV* ADI APP APS
APS AGA 2.3.12	Explain the effect of runway visual range on aerodrome operation.	2		*ADV* ADI APP APS

TOPIC AGA 3 - OBSTACLES

Subtopic AGA 3.1 - Obstacle-free airspace around aerodromes

APS AGA 3.1.1	Explain the necessity for establishing and maintaining an obstacle-free airspace around aerodromes.	2		ADV ADI APP APS

TOPIC AGA 4 - MISCELLANEOUS EQUIPMENT

Subtopic AGA 4.1 - Location

APS AGA 4.1.1	Explain the location of different aerodrome ground equipment.	2	*Optional content: LLZ, GP, VDF, radio communication or ATS surveillance systems sensors, stopbars, AVASI, VASI, PAPI*	ADV ADI APP APS

www.eurocontrol.int

Network Manager
nominated by
the European Commission

EUROCONTROL

EUROCONTROL Specification

EUROCONTROL Specifications for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training

Annex 7: Area Control Surveillance Rating - ACS

Edition: 2.0
Edition date: 02/04/2015
Reference Number: EUROCONTROL-SPEC-157

EUROPEAN ORGANISATION
FOR THE SAFETY OF AIR NAVIGATION

EUROCONTROL

EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training

Annex 7 Area Control Surveillance Rating ACS

Edition Number	:	2.0
Edition Date	:	02/04/2015
Status	:	Released Issue
Intended for	:	NMD Stakeholders

NETWORK MANAGER DIRECTORATE

Page intentionally left blank

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Annex 2 of the EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training V2.0 details the training objectives for the **Rating ATC training: Area Control Surveillance**.

For training organisations providing ATCO training to meet the requirements laid down in the **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340 laying down technical requirements and administrative procedures relating to air traffic controllers' licences and certificates**, and the acceptable means of compliance (AMCs) associated with the regulation, this syllabus does not change any of the content in the regulation, but rather provides a document that combines the relevant elements into a familiar user format. For European organisations not required to comply with EU legislation, it provides an **Area Control Surveillance Rating training syllabus** that retains references to ICAO documentation.

Rating training is defined ***as theoretical and practical training designed to impart knowledge and practical skills related to a specific rating and, if applicable, rating endorsement.***

The composition and topics were chosen based on the **Commission Regulation (EU) 2015/340** Annex I — Rating training (Reference: Annex I — Part ATCO Subpart D, Section 2, ATCO.D.010(a)(2)(vi)) and ICAO Annex 1 requirements for an Air Traffic Control licence. The structure of the syllabus reflects a logical grouping of objectives into coherent subjects.

The order of subjects and objectives is neither intended to convey a pedagogical sequence nor to indicate a relative level of importance. No recommendation is made in this area. When teaching the objectives, it is envisaged that different training methodologies will be used.

Prior to developing or updating the **ACS Rating training course,** training providers must be familiar with the information contained in the EUROCONTROL Specification for the ATCO Common Core Content Initial Training V2.0, particularly Section 6 (How to use this document) which contains, amongst other items, the fundamental principles that are applied to the Specification.

Page intentionally left blank

Contents

Page intentionally left blank

SUBJECT 1: INTRODUCTION TO THE COURSE

The subject objective is:

Learners shall know and understand the training programme that they will follow and learn how to obtain the appropriate information.

TOPIC INTR 1 - COURSE MANAGEMENT

Subtopic INTR 1.1 - Course introduction				
ACS INTR 1.1.1	Explain the aims and main objectives of the course.	2		ALL
Subtopic INTR 1.2 - Course administration				
ACS INTR 1.2.1	State course administration.	1		ALL
Subtopic INTR 1.3 - Study material and training documentation				
ACS INTR 1.3.1	Use appropriate documentation and their sources for course studies.	3	*Optional content: training documentation, library, CBT library, web, learning management server*	ALL
ACS INTR 1.3.2	Integrate appropriate information into course studies.	4	Training documentation *Optional content: supplementary information, library*	ALL

TOPIC INTR 2 - INTRODUCTION TO THE ATC TRAINING COURSE

Subtopic INTR 2.1 - Course content and organisation				
ACS INTR 2.1.1	State the different training methods applied in the course.	1	Theoretical training, practical training, self-study, types of training events	ALL
ACS INTR 2.1.2	State the subjects of the course and their purpose.	1		ALL
ACS INTR 2.1.3	Describe the organisation of theoretical training.	2	*Optional content: course programme*	ALL
ACS INTR 2.1.4	Describe the organisation of practical training.	2	*Optional content: PTP, simulation, briefing, debriefing, course programme*	ALL

Subtopic INTR 2.2 - Training ethos				
ACS INTR 2.2.1	Recognise the feedback mechanisms available.	1	Training progress, assessment, briefing, debriefing, learner/instructor feedback, instructor/instructor feedback	ALL
Subtopic INTR 2.3 - Assessment process				
ACS INTR 2.3.1	Describe the assessment process.	2		ALL

SUBJECT 2: AVIATION LAW

The subject objective is:

Learners shall know, understand and apply the Rules of the Air and the Regulations regarding reporting, airspace and appreciate the Licensing and Competence principles.

TOPIC LAW 1 - ATCO LICENSING/CERTIFICATE OF COMPETENCE

Subtopic LAW 1.1 - Privileges and conditions

ACS LAW 1.1.1	Appreciate the conditions which shall be met to issue an Area Control Surveillance rating.	3	Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on ATCO Licences ICAO Annex 1 *Optional content: National documents*	ACS
ACS LAW 1.1.2	Explain how to maintain and update professional knowledge and skills to retain competence in the operational environment.	2		ALL
ACS LAW 1.1.3	Explain the conditions for suspension/revocation of ATCO licence.	2	Regulation (EU) 2015/340 on ATCO Licences ICAO Annex 1	ALL

TOPIC LAW 2 - RULES AND REGULATIONS

Subtopic LAW 2.1 - Reports

ACS LAW 2.1.1	List the standard forms for reports.	1	Air traffic incident report *Optional content: routine air reports, breach of regulations, watch/log book, records*	ALL
ACS LAW 2.1.2	Describe the functions of, and processes for, reporting.	2	Reporting culture, air traffic incident report *Optional content: breach of regulations, watch/log book, records, voluntary reporting, ESARR 2*	ALL
ACS LAW 2.1.3	Use forms for reporting.	3	Regulation (EU) No 376/2014, air traffic incident reporting form(s) ICAO Doc 4444 Appendix 4, air traffic incident reporting form(s) *Optional content: routine air reports, breach of regulations, watch/log book, records*	ALL

Subtopic LAW 2.2 - Airspace				
ACS LAW 2.2.1	Appreciate classes and structure of airspace and their relevance to Area Control Surveillance rating operations.	3		ACS
ACS LAW 2.2.2	Provide planning, coordination and control actions appropriate to the airspace classification and structure.	4	*Optional content: Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 2, ICAO Annex 11, international requirements, civil requirements, military requirements, areas of responsibility, sectorization, national requirements*	ALL
ACS LAW 2.2.3	Appreciate responsibility for terrain clearance.	3		ALL

TOPIC LAW 3 - ATC SAFETY MANAGEMENT

Subtopic LAW 3.1 - Feedback process				
ACS LAW 3.1.1	State the importance of controller contribution to the feedback process.	1	*Optional content: voluntary reporting*	ALL
ACS LAW 3.1.2	Describe how reported occurrences are analysed.	2	*Optional content: ESARR 2, local procedures*	ALL
ACS LAW 3.1.3	Name the means used to disseminate recommendations.	1	*Optional content: safety letters, safety boards web pages*	ALL
ACS LAW 3.1.4	Appreciate the 'Just Culture' concept.	3	Benefits, prerequisites, constraints *Optional content: EAM 2 GUI 6, GAIN Report*	ALL
Subtopic LAW 3.2 - Safety Investigation				
ACS LAW 3.2.1	Describe role and mission of Safety Investigation in the improvement of safety.	2		ALL
ACS LAW 3.2.2	Define working methods of Safety Investigation.	1		ALL

SUBJECT 3: AIR TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall manage air traffic to ensure safe, orderly and expeditious services.

TOPIC ATM 1 - PROVISION OF SERVICES

Subtopic ATM 1.1 - Air traffic control (ATC) service				
ACS ATM 1.1.1	Appreciate own area of responsibility.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 1.1.2	Provide area control service.	4	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 7030, ICAO Doc 4444, operation manuals ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 7030, ICAO Doc 4444, operation manuals	ACP ACS
Subtopic ATM 1.2 - Flight information service (FIS)				
ACS ATM 1.2.1	Provide FIS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
ACS ATM 1.2.2	Use ATS surveillance system for the provision of FIS.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, information to identified aircraft concerning: traffic, navigation *Optional content: weather*	APS ACS
ACS ATM 1.2.3	Issue appropriate information concerning the location of conflicting traffic.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, traffic information, essential traffic information	APS ACS *APP* *ACP*
Subtopic ATM 1.3 - Alerting service (ALRS)				
ACS ATM 1.3.1	Provide ALRS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
ACS ATM 1.3.2	Respond to distress and urgency messages and signals.	3	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 10, ICAO Doc 4444 ICAO Annex 10, ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: EUROCONTROL Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations*	ALL

Subtopic ATM 1.3 - Alerting service (ALRS)				
ACS ATM 1.3.3	Use ATS surveillance system for the provision of ALRS.	3		APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 1.4 - ATS system capacity and air traffic flow management				
ACS ATM 1.4.1	Appreciate principles of ATS system capacity and air traffic flow management.	3	*Optional content: EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual, FABs, FUA, free flight, etc.*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 1.4.2	Apply flow management procedures in the provision of ATC.	3	*Optional content: EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 1.4.3	Organise traffic flows and patterns to take account of airspace boundaries.	4	*Optional content: civil and military, controlled, uncontrolled, advisory, restricted, danger, prohibited, special rules, sector boundaries, national boundaries, FIR boundaries, delegated airspace, transfer of control, transfer of communications, en-route, off-route*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 1.4.4	Organise traffic flows and patterns to take account of areas of responsibility.	4	*Optional content: EUROCONTROL ATFCM Users Manual*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 1.4.5	Inform supervisor of situation.	3	*Optional content: abnormal situations, decrease in sector capacity, limitations on systems and equipment, changes in workload/capacity, unusual meteorological conditions, relevant information like: reported ground-based incidents, forest fire, smoke, oil pollution*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 1.4.6	Organise traffic flows and patterns to take account of ATS surveillance system capability.	4		APS ACS

Subtopic ATM 1.5 - Airspace management (ASM)				
ACS ATM 1.5.1	Appreciate the principles and means of ASM.	3	Regulation (EC) No 551/2004, Regulation (EC) 2150/2005, Regulation (EC) No 730/2006 EUROCONTROL ASM HBK - Airspace Management Handbook for the application of FUA *Optional content: FABs, EUROCONTROL Specification for the application of FUA, TSAs, CDRs, CBAs*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 1.5.2	Organise traffic to take account of ASM.	4	Real-time activation, deactivation or reallocation of airspace *Optional content: CDR, TSA, TRA, CBA*	*APS* ACS
TOPIC ATM 2 - COMMUNICATION				
Subtopic ATM 2.1 - Effective communication				
ACS ATM 2.1.1	Use approved phraseology.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: ICAO Doc 9432 RTF manual, standard words and phrases as contained in ICAO Annex 10 Vol. 2*	ALL
ACS ATM 2.1.2	Ensure effective communication.	4	Communication techniques, readback/verification of readback	ALL
TOPIC ATM 3 - ATC CLEARANCES AND ATC INSTRUCTIONS				
Subtopic ATM 3.1 - ATC clearances				
ACS ATM 3.1.1	Issue appropriate ATC clearances.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
ACS ATM 3.1.2	Integrate appropriate ATC clearances in control service.	4		ALL
ACS ATM 3.1.3	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL

Subtopic ATM 3.2 - ATC instructions				
ACS ATM 3.2.1	Issue appropriate ATC instructions.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	ALL
ACS ATM 3.2.2	Integrate appropriate ATC instructions in control service.	4		ALL
ACS ATM 3.2.3	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL

TOPIC ATM 4 - COORDINATION

Subtopic ATM 4.1 - Necessity for coordination				
ACS ATM 4.1.1	Identify the need for coordination.	3		ALL
Subtopic ATM 4.2 - Tools and methods for coordination				
ACS ATM 4.2.1	Use the available tools for coordination.	3	*Optional content: electronic transfer of flight data, telephone, interphone, intercom, direct speech, radiotelephone (RTF), local agreements, automated system coordination*	ALL
Subtopic ATM 4.3 - Coordination procedures				
ACS ATM 4.3.1	Initiate appropriate coordination.	3	Delegation/transfer of responsibility for air-ground communications and separation, transfer of control, etc. ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: release point*	ALL
ACS ATM 4.3.2	Analyse effect of coordination requested by an adjacent position/unit.	4	*Optional content: delegation/transfer of responsibility for air-ground communications and separation, release point, transfer of control, etc.*	ALL
ACS ATM 4.3.3	Select, after negotiation, an appropriate course of action.	5		ALL

Subtopic ATM 4.3 - Coordination procedures				
ACS ATM 4.3.4	Ensure the agreed course of action is carried out.	4		ALL
ACS ATM 4.3.5	Coordinate in the provision of FIS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
ACS ATM 4.3.6	Coordinate in the provision of ALRS.	4	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL

TOPIC ATM 5 - ALTIMETRY AND LEVEL ALLOCATION

Subtopic ATM 5.1 - Altimetry				
ACS ATM 5.1.1	Allocate levels according to altimetry data.	4	ICAO Doc 8168, ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
ACS ATM 5.1.2	Ensure separation according to altimetry data.	4	*Optional content: transition level, transition altitude, transition layer, height, flight level, altitude, vertical distance to airspace boundaries*	ALL
Subtopic ATM 5.2 - Terrain clearance				
ACS ATM 5.2.1	Provide planning, coordination and control actions appropriate to the rules for minimum safe levels and terrain clearance.	4	*Optional content: minimum vectoring altitude, terrain clearance dimensions, minimum safe altitudes, transition level, minimum flight level, minimum sector altitude*	APS ACS

TOPIC ATM 6 - SEPARATIONS

Subtopic ATM 6.1 - Vertical separation				
ACS ATM 6.1.1	Provide standard vertical separation.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030, level allocation, during climb/descent, rate of climb/descent, RVSM, non-RVSM aircraft, holding pattern	ACP ACS
ACS ATM 6.1.2	Provide increased vertical separation.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030 *Optional content: level allocation, during climb/descent, rate of climb/descent*	APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic ATM 6.1 - Vertical separation				
ACS ATM 6.1.3	Appreciate the application of vertical emergency separation.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030	APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 6.1.4	Provide vertical separation in a surveillance environment.	4	Pressure altitude-derived information, pilot level reports *Optional content: into/out of ATS surveillance system coverage*	APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 6.2 - Longitudinal separation in a surveillance environment				
ACS ATM 6.2.1	Provide longitudinal separation in a surveillance environment.	4	Successive departures, successive arrivals, overflights, speed control, Mach number techniques, silent transfer, ICAO Doc 4444	ACS
Subtopic ATM 6.3 - Wake turbulence distance-based separation				
ACS ATM 6.3.1	Provide distance-based wake turbulence separation.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: national documents*	*APS* ACS
Subtopic ATM 6.4 - Separation based on ATS surveillance systems				
ACS ATM 6.4.1	Describe how separation based on ATS surveillance systems is applied.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	*APS* ACS
ACS ATM 6.4.2	Provide horizontal separation.	4	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030, local operation manuals, holding	APS ACS
ACS ATM 6.4.3	Provide horizontal separation by vectoring in a variety of situations.	4	*Optional content: transit, meteorological phenomena, vectoring for approach, departure vs transit vs arrival*	*APS* ACS
ACS ATM 6.4.4	Ensure horizontal or vertical separation from airspace boundaries.	4	Adjacent sectors, PRD, TSAs.	*APS* ACS

TOPIC ATM 7 - AIRBORNE COLLISION AVOIDANCE SYSTEMS AND GROUND-BASED SAFETY NETS

Subtopic ATM 7.1 - Airborne collision avoidance systems

ACS ATM 7.1.1	Differentiate between ACAS advisory thresholds and separation standards applicable in the area control environment.	2	ICAO Doc 9863 *Optional content: EUROCONTROL TCAS web page*	ACP ACS
ACS ATM 7.1.2	Describe the controller responsibility during and following an ACAS RA reported by pilot.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
ACS ATM 7.1.3	Respond to pilot notification of actions based on airborne systems warnings.	3	ACAS, TAWS *Optional content: EUROCONTROL ACAS web page*	ALL

Subtopic ATM 7.2 - Ground-based safety nets

ACS ATM 7.2.1	Describe the controller responsibility during and following safety net warnings.	2	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: STCA, MSAW, APW, APM*	APS ACS
ACS ATM 7.2.2	Respond to ground-based safety net warnings.	3	*Optional content: STCA, MSAW, APW, APM*	APS ACS

TOPIC ATM 8 - DATA DISPLAY

Subtopic ATM 8.1 - Data management				
ACS ATM 8.1.1	Update the data display to accurately reflect the traffic situation.	3	*Optional content: information displayed, strip marking procedures, electronic information data displays, actions based on traffic display information, calculation of EETs*	ALL
ACS ATM 8.1.2	Analyse pertinent data on data displays.	4		ALL
ACS ATM 8.1.3	Organise pertinent data on data displays.	4		ALL
ACS ATM 8.1.4	Obtain flight plan information.	3	CPL, FPL, supplementary information *Optional content: RPL, AFIL, etc.*	ALL
ACS ATM 8.1.5	Use flight plan information.	3		ALL

TOPIC ATM 9 - OPERATIONAL ENVIRONMENT (SIMULATED)

Subtopic ATM 9.1 - Integrity of the operational environment				
ACS ATM 9.1.1	Obtain information concerning the operational environment.	3	*Optional content: briefing, notices, local orders, verification of information*	ALL
ACS ATM 9.1.2	Ensure the integrity of the operational environment.	4	*Optional content: integrity of displays, verification of the information provided by displays, etc.*	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 9.2 - Verification of the currency of operational procedures				
ACS ATM 9.2.1	Check all relevant documentation before managing traffic.	3	*Optional content: briefing, LOAs, NOTAM, AICs*	ALL
ACS ATM 9.2.2	Manage traffic in accordance with procedural changes.	4		APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic ATM 9.3 - Handover-takeover				
ACS ATM 9.3.1	Transfer information to the relieving controller.	3		ALL
ACS ATM 9.3.2	Obtain information from the controller handing over.	3		ALL

TOPIC ATM 10 - PROVISION OF CONTROL SERVICE

Subtopic ATM 10.1 - Responsibility and processing of information				
ACS ATM 10.1.1	Describe the division of responsibility between air traffic control units.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	*ALL*
ACS ATM 10.1.2	Describe the responsibility in regard to military traffic.	2	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: ICAO Doc 9554*	*ALL*
ACS ATM 10.1.3	Describe the responsibility in regard to unmanned free balloons.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 10.1.4	Obtain operational information.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, local operation manuals	APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 10.1.5	Interpret operational information.	5		APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 10.1.6	Organise forwarding of operational information.	4	*Optional content: including the use of backup procedures*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 10.1.7	Integrate operational information into control decisions.	4		APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 10.1.8	Appreciate the influence of operational requirements.	3	*Optional content: military flying, calibration flights, aerial photography*	*ALL*

Subtopic ATM 10.2 - ATS surveillance service				
ACS ATM 10.2.1	Explain the responsibility for the provision of ATS surveillance service appropriate to ACS rating.	2	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Annex 11, local operation manuals	ACS
ACS ATM 10.2.2	Explain the functions that may be performed with the use of ATS surveillance systems derived information presented on a situation display.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	APS ACS
ACS ATM 10.2.3	Provide planning, coordination and control actions appropriate to the VFR and IFR in VMC and IMC.	4	Regulation (EU) No 923/2012, ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 4444 ICAO Annex 2, ICAO Annex 11, ICAO Doc 4444	ACS *ACP*
ACS ATM 10.2.4	Apply the procedures for termination of ATS surveillance service.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: transfer of control, termination or interruption of ATS surveillance service*	APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 10.3 - Traffic management process				
ACS ATM 10.3.1	Ensure that situational awareness is maintained.	4	Information gathering, scanning, traffic projection	APS ACS
ACS ATM 10.3.2	Detect conflicts in time for appropriate resolution.	4		ALL
ACS ATM 10.3.3	Identify potential solutions to achieve a safe and effective traffic flow.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 10.3.4	Evaluate possible outcomes of different planning and control actions.	5		APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 10.3.5	Select an appropriate plan in time to achieve safe and effective traffic flow.	5		APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 10.3.6	Ensure an adequate priority of actions.	4		*ALL*

Subtopic ATM 10.3 - Traffic management process				
ACS ATM 10.3.7	Execute selected plan in a timely manner.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 10.3.8	Ensure a safe and efficient outcome is achieved.	4	Traffic monitoring, adaptability and follow up	ALL
Subtopic ATM 10.4 - Handling traffic				
ACS ATM 10.4.1	Manage arrivals, departures and overflights.	4		APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 10.4.2	Balance the workload against personal capacity.	5	*Optional content: re-routing, re-planning, prioritising solutions, denying requests, delegating responsibility for separation*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 10.4.3	Define flight path monitoring and vectoring.	1	ICAO Doc 4444	APS ACS
ACS ATM 10.4.4	Explain the requirements for vectoring and termination of vectoring.	2	ICAO Doc 4444	APS ACS
ACS ATM 10.4.5	Provide vectoring.	4	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: separation, expediting arrivals, departures and/or climb to cruising levels, aircraft leaving the hold, navigation assistance, uncontrolled airspace, etc.*	APS ACS
ACS ATM 10.4.6	Apply the procedures for termination of vectoring.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 10.5 - Control service with advanced system support				
ACS ATM 10.5.1	Appreciate the impact of advanced systems on the provision of area control service.	3	*Optional content: sequencing systems, automated holding lists, vertical traffic displays, conflict detection and decision making tools, automated information and coordination tools*	ACS

TOPIC ATM 11 - HOLDING

Subtopic ATM 11.1 - General holding procedures

ACS ATM 11.1.1	Apply holding procedures.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, holding instructions, allocation of holding levels, onward clearance times	APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ATM 11.1.2	Appreciate the factors affecting holding patterns.	3	Effect of speed, effect of level used, effect of navigation aid in use, turbulence, aircraft type	APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic ATM 11.2 - Holding aircraft

ACS ATM 11.2.1	Calculate expected onward clearance times.	3		ACP ACS

Subtopic ATM 11.3 - Holding in a surveillance environment

ACS ATM 11.3.1	Organise traffic to separate other aircraft from holding aircraft.	4		APS ACS
ACS ATM 11.3.2	Integrate system support, when available.	4	*Optional content: arrival management system, automated holding lists, vertical traffic displays*	APS ACS

TOPIC ATM 12 - IDENTIFICATION

Subtopic ATM 12.1 - Establishment of identification

ACS ATM 12.1.1	Appreciate the precautions when establishing identification.	3		APS ACS
ACS ATM 12.1.2	Identify aircraft.	3	*Optional content: PSR, SSR or ADS identification method*	APS ACS
ACS ATM 12.1.3	Apply procedures in the case of misidentification.	3		APS ACS

Subtopic ATM 12.2 - Maintenance of identification				
ACS ATM 12.2.1	Appreciate the necessity to maintain identification.	3		APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 12.3 - Loss of identity				
ACS ATM 12.3.1	Appreciate when an aircraft identification is lost or in doubt.	3	*Optional content: out of ATS surveillance system coverage, failure of ATS surveillance system, weather clutter, other clutter, garbling, holding, etc.*	APS ACS
ACS ATM 12.3.2	Apply methods to re-establish identification.	3		APS ACS
ACS ATM 12.3.3	Respond to loss/doubt concerning identification.	3	*Optional content: procedural separation*	APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 12.4 - Position Information				
ACS ATM 12.4.1	Appreciate the circumstances when position information should be passed to the aircraft.	3		APS ACS
ACS ATM 12.4.2	State the format in which position information can be passed to aircraft.	1	ICAO Doc 4444	APS ACS
Subtopic ATM 12.5 - Transfer of identity				
ACS ATM 12.5.1	Apply the methods of transfer of identification.	3		APS ACS
ACS ATM 12.5.2	Appreciate the precautions when transferring identification.	3		APS ACS

SUBJECT 4: METEOROLOGY

The subject objective is:

Learners shall acquire, decode and make proper use of meteorological information relevant to the provision of ATS.

TOPIC MET 1 - METEOROLOGICAL PHENOMENA

Subtopic MET 1.1 - Meteorological phenomena

ACS MET 1.1.1	Appreciate the impact of adverse weather.	3	Thunderstorms, icing, jet streams, clear air turbulence (CAT), turbulence, microburst, severe mountain waves, line squalls, volcanic ash *Optional content: solar radiation*	ACP ACS
ACS MET 1.1.2	Integrate data about meteorological phenomena into provision of ATS.	4	Clearances, instructions and transmitted information *Optional content: relevant meteorological phenomena*	*ALL*
ACS MET 1.1.3	Use techniques to avoid adverse weather when necessary/possible.	3	Re-routing, level change, etc.	APP ACP APS ACS

TOPIC MET 2 - SOURCES OF METEOROLOGICAL DATA

Subtopic MET 2.1 - Sources of meteorological information

ACS MET 2.1.1	Obtain meteorological information	3	METAR, TAF, SIGMET, AIRMET *Optional content: AIREP/AIREP Special*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACS MET 2.1.2	Relay meteorological information.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: flight information centre, adjacent ATS unit*	*ALL*

SUBJECT 5: NAVIGATION

The subject objective is:

Learners shall analyse all navigational aspects in order to organise the traffic.

TOPIC NAV 1 - MAPS AND AERONAUTICAL CHARTS

Subtopic NAV 1.1 - Maps and charts

ACS NAV 1.1.1	Use relevant maps and charts.	3		*APP* ACP *APS* ACS

TOPIC NAV 2 - INSTRUMENT NAVIGATION

Subtopic NAV 2.1 - Navigational systems

ACS NAV 2.1.1	Manage traffic in case of change in the operational status of navigational systems.	4	*Optional content: limitations, status of ground-based and satellite-based systems*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACS NAV 2.1.2	Appreciate the effect of precision, limitations and change of the operational status of navigational systems.	3	*Optional content: limitations, status, degraded procedures*	*ALL*

Subtopic NAV 2.2 - Navigational assistance

ACS NAV 2.2.1	Evaluate the necessary information to be provided to pilots in need of navigational assistance.	5	*Optional content: nearest most suitable aerodrome, track, heading, distance, aerodrome information, any other navigational assistance relevant at the time*	*APP* ACP *APS* ACS
ACS NAV 2.2.2	Assist aircraft in navigation when required.	3	Aircraft observed to be deviating from its known intended route, on request	APS ACS

Subtopic NAV 2.3 - PBN applications				
ACS NAV 2.3.1	State the navigation applications used in terminal and en-route environments.	1	Terminal-RNAV-1 (≈P-RNAV); En-route-RNAV-5 (B-RNAV) *Optional content: A-RNP, EC PBN Implementing Rule, ICAO Doc 9613*	ACP ACS
ACS NAV 2.3.2	Explain the principles and designation of navigation specifications in use.	2	*Optional content: performance, functionality, sensors, aircrew and controller requirements*	*APP* ACP *APS* ACS
ACS NAV 2.3.3	State future PBN developments.	1	A-RNP, APV *Optional content: RNP 3D, RNP 4D*	*ADI* *APP* ACP *APS* ACS

SUBJECT 6: AIRCRAFT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall assess and integrate aircraft performance in the provision of ATS.

TOPIC ACFT 1 - AIRCRAFT INSTRUMENTS

Subtopic ACFT 1.1 - Aircraft instruments

ACS ACFT 1.1.1	Integrate information from aircraft instruments provided by the pilot in the provision of ATS.	4		ALL
ACS ACFT 1.1.2	Explain the operation of aircraft radio equipment.	2	*Optional content: radios (number of), emergency radios*	ALL
ACS ACFT 1.1.3	Explain the operation of on-board surveillance equipment.	2	Transponders: equipment Mode A, Mode C, Mode S, ADS capability	ADI APS ACS

TOPIC ACFT 2 - AIRCRAFT CATEGORIES

Subtopic ACFT 2.1 - Wake turbulence

ACS ACFT 2.1.1	Explain the wake turbulence effect and associated hazards to the succeeding aircraft.	2		ALL
ACS ACFT 2.1.2	Appreciate the techniques used to prevent hazards associated with wake turbulence on succeeding aircraft.	3		ALL

TOPIC ACFT 3 - FACTORS AFFECTING AIRCRAFT PERFORMANCE

Subtopic ACFT 3.1 - Climb factors

ACS ACFT 3.1.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during climb.	4	*Optional content: speed, mass, air density, cabin pressurisation, wind and temperature*	APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic ACFT 3.2 - Cruise factors				
ACS ACFT 3.2.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during cruise.	4	Level, cruising speed, wind, mass, cabin pressurisation	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic ACFT 3.3 - Descent factors				
ACS ACFT 3.3.1	Integrate the influence of factors affecting aircraft during descent.	4	*Optional content: wind, speed, rate of descent, cabin pressurisation*	ACP ACS
Subtopic ACFT 3.4 - Economic factors				
ACS ACFT 3.4.1	Integrate consideration of economic factors affecting aircraft.	4	*Optional content: routing, level, speed, rate of climb and rate of descent, approach profile, top of descent*	ACP ACS
ACS ACFT 3.4.2	Use continuous climb techniques where applicable.	3		*APP* ACP *APS* ACS
ACS ACFT 3.4.3	Use direct routing where applicable.	3		*APP* ACP *APS* ACS
Subtopic ACFT 3.5 - Environmental factors				
ACS ACFT 3.5.1	Appreciate the performance restrictions due to environmental constraints.	3	*Optional content: fuel dumping, minimum flight levels, continuous descent operations*	ACP ACS

TOPIC ACFT 4 - AIRCRAFT DATA

Subtopic ACFT 4.1 - Performance data				
ACS ACFT 4.1.1	Integrate the average performance data of a representative sample of aircraft which will be encountered in the operational/working environment into the provision of a control service.	4	Performance data under a representative variety of circumstances	APP ACP APS ACS

SUBJECT 7: HUMAN FACTORS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall recognise the necessity to constantly extend their knowledge and analyse factors which affect personal and team performance.

TOPIC HUM 1 - PSYCHOLOGICAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 1.1 - Cognitive

ACS HUM 1.1.1	Describe the human information processing model.	2	Attention, perception, memory, situational awareness, decision making, response	ALL
ACS HUM 1.1.2	Describe the factors which influence human information processing.	2	Confidence, stress, learning, knowledge, experience, fatigue, alcohol/drugs, distraction, interpersonal relations	ALL
ACS HUM 1.1.3	Monitor the effect of human information processing factors on decision making.	3	*Optional content: workload, stress, interpersonal relations, distraction, confidence*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 2 - MEDICAL AND PHYSIOLOGICAL FACTORS

Subtopic HUM 2.1 - Fatigue

ACS HUM 2.1.1	State factors that cause fatigue.	1	Shift work *Optional content: night shifts and rosters*	ALL
ACS HUM 2.1.2	Describe the onset of fatigue.	2	*Optional content: lack of concentration, listlessness, irritability, frustration, ICAO Circular 241 – AN/145 Human factors in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ACS HUM 2.1.3	Recognise the onset of fatigue in self.	1	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 241 – AN/145 Human factors in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ACS HUM 2.1.4	Recognise the onset of fatigue in others.	1		ALL
ACS HUM 2.1.5	Describe appropriate action when recognising fatigue.	2		ALL

Subtopic HUM 2.2 - Fitness				
ACS HUM 2.2.1	Recognise signs of lack of personal fitness.	1		ALL
ACS HUM 2.2.2	Describe actions when aware of a lack of personal fitness.	2		ALL
TOPIC HUM 3 - SOCIAL AND ORGANISATIONAL FACTORS				
Subtopic HUM 3.1 - Team resource management (TRM)				
ACS HUM 3.1.1	State the relevance of TRM.	1	*Optional content: TRM course, EUROCONTROL Guidelines for the development of TRM training*	ALL
ACS HUM 3.1.2	State the content of the TRM concept.	1	*Optional content: team work, human error, team roles, stress, decision making, communication, situational awareness*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 3.2 - Teamwork and team roles				
ACS HUM 3.2.1	Identify reasons for conflict.	3		ALL
ACS HUM 3.2.2	Describe actions to prevent human conflicts.	2	*Optional content: TRM team roles*	ALL
ACS HUM 3.2.3	Describe strategies to cope with human conflicts.	2	*Optional content: in your team, in the simulator*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 3.3 - Responsible behaviour				
ACS HUM 3.3.1	Consider the factors which influence responsible behaviour.	2	*Optional content: situation, team, personal situation and judgement, instance of justification, moral motivation, personality*	ALL
ACS HUM 3.3.2	Apply responsible judgement.	3	Case study and discussion about a dilemma situation	ALL

TOPIC HUM 4 - STRESS

Subtopic HUM 4.1 - Stress				
ACS HUM 4.1.1	Recognise the effects of stress on performance.	1	Stress and its symptoms in self and in others	ALL
Subtopic HUM 4.2 - Stress management				
ACS HUM 4.2.1	Act to reduce stress.	3	The effect of personality in coping with stress, the benefits of active stress management	ALL
ACS HUM 4.2.2	Respond to stressful situation by offering, asking or accepting assistance.	3	*Optional content: the benefits of offering, accepting and asking for help in stressful situations*	ALL
ACS HUM 4.2.3	Recognise the effect of shocking and stressful events.	1	Self and others, abnormal situations, CISM	ALL
ACS HUM 4.2.4	Consider the benefits of Critical Incident Stress Management (CISM).	2		ALL
ACS HUM 4.2.5	Explain procedures used following an incident/accident.	2	*Optional content: CISM, counselling, human element*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 5 - HUMAN ERROR

Subtopic HUM 5.1 - Human error				
ACS HUM 5.1.1	Explain the relationship between error and safety.	2	Number and combination of errors, proactive versus reactive approach to discovery of error *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ACS HUM 5.1.2	Differentiate between the types of error.	2	Slips, lapses, mistakes *Optional content: Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL

Subtopic HUM 5.1 - Human error				
ACS HUM 5.1.3	Describe error-prone conditions.	2	*Optional content: increase in traffic, changes in procedures, complexities of systems or traffic, weather, unusual occurrences*	ALL
ACS HUM 5.1.4	Collect examples of different error types, their causes and consequences in ATC.	3	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ACS HUM 5.1.5	Explain how to detect errors to compensate for them.	2	STCA, MSAW, individual and collective strategy *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ACS HUM 5.1.6	Execute corrective actions.	3	Error compensation *Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL
ACS HUM 5.1.7	Explain the importance of error management.	2	*Optional content: prevention of incidents, safety improvement, revision of procedures and/or working practises*	ALL
ACS HUM 5.1.8	Describe the impact on an ATCO following an occurrence/incident.	2	*Optional content: reporting, SMS, investigation, CISM*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 5.2 - Violation of rules				
ACS HUM 5.2.1	Explain the causes and dangers of violation of rules becoming accepted as a practice.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Circular 314 – AN/178 Threat and Error Management (TEM) in Air Traffic Control*	ALL

TOPIC HUM 6 - COLLABORATIVE WORK

Subtopic HUM 6.1 - Communication				
ACS HUM 6.1.1	Use communication effectively in ATC.	3		ALL
ACS HUM 6.1.2	Analyse examples of pilot and controller communication for effectiveness.	4		ALL
Subtopic HUM 6.2 - Collaborative work within the same area of responsibility				
ACS HUM 6.2.1	List communication means between controllers in charge of the same area of responsibility (sector or tower).	1	*Optional content: electronic, written, verbal and non-verbal communication*	ALL
ACS HUM 6.2.2	Explain consequences of the use of communication means on effectiveness.	2	*Optional content: strips legibility and encoding, labels designation, feedback*	ALL
ACS HUM 6.2.3	List possible actions to provide a safe position handover.	1	*Optional content: rigour, preparation, overlap time*	ALL
ACS HUM 6.2.4	Explain consequences of a missed position handover process.	2		ALL
Subtopic HUM 6.3 - Collaborative work between different areas of responsibility				
ACS HUM 6.3.1	List factors and means for an effective coordination between sectors and/or tower positions.	1	*Optional content: other sectors constraints, electronic coordination tools*	ALL
Subtopic HUM 6.4 - Controller/pilot cooperation				
ACS HUM 6.4.1	Describe parameters affecting controller/pilot cooperation.	2	*Optional content: workload, mutual knowledge, controller vs pilot mental picture*	ALL

SUBJECT 8: EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall integrate knowledge and understanding of the basic working principles of equipment and systems and comply with the equipment and system degradation procedures in the provision of ATS.

TOPIC EQPS 1 - VOICE COMMUNICATIONS

Subtopic EQPS 1.1 - Radio communications

ACS EQPS 1.1.1	Operate two-way communication equipment.	3	Transmit/receive switches, procedures *Optional content: frequency selection, standby equipment*	ALL
ACS EQPS 1.1.2	Identify indications of operational status of radio equipment.	3	*Optional content: indicator lights, serviceability displays, selector/frequency displays*	ALL
ACS EQPS 1.1.3	Consider radio range.	2	*Optional content: transfer to another frequency, apparent radio failure, failure to establish radio contact, frequency protection range*	APP ACP APS ACS

Subtopic EQPS 1.2 - Other voice communications

ACS EQPS 1.2.1	Operate landline communications.	3	*Optional content: telephone, interphone and intercom equipment*	ALL

TOPIC EQPS 2 - AUTOMATION IN ATS

Subtopic EQPS 2.1 - Aeronautical fixed telecommunication network (AFTN)

ACS EQPS 2.1.1	Decode AFTN messages.	3	*Optional content: movement and control messages, NOTAM, SNOWTAM, BIRDTAM, etc.*	ALL

Subtopic EQPS 2.2 - Automatic data interchange				
ACS EQPS 2.2.1	Use automatic data transfer equipment where available.	3	*Optional content: sequencing systems, automated information and coordination, OLDI*	ADV ADI APS ACS

TOPIC EQPS 3 - CONTROLLER WORKING POSITION

Subtopic EQPS 3.1 - Operation and monitoring of equipment				
ACS EQPS 3.1.1	Monitor the technical integrity of the controller working position.	3	Notification procedures, responsibilities	ALL
ACS EQPS 3.1.2	Operate the equipment of the controller working position.	3	*Optional content: situation displays, flight progress board, flight data display, radio, telephone, maps and charts, strip-printer, clock, information systems, UDF/VDF*	ALL
ACS EQPS 3.1.3	Operate available equipment in abnormal and emergency situations.	3		ALL
Subtopic EQPS 3.2 - Situation displays and information systems				
ACS EQPS 3.2.1	Use situation displays.	3		ALL
ACS EQPS 3.2.2	Check availability of information material.	3		ALL
ACS EQPS 3.2.3	Obtain information from equipment.	3		APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic EQPS 3.3 - Flight data systems				
ACS EQPS 3.3.1	Use the flight data information at controller working position.	3		ALL

Subtopic EQPS 3.4 - Use of ATS surveillance system				
ACS EQPS 3.4.1	Use the ATS surveillance system functions.	3		APS ACS
ACS EQPS 3.4.2	Analyse the information provided by the ATS surveillance system.	4		APS ACS
ACS EQPS 3.4.3	Assign codes.	4		APS ACS
ACS EQPS 3.4.4	Appreciate the use of advanced surveillance technology.	3	*Optional content: Mode S, ADS-B, MLAT*	APS ACS
Subtopic EQPS 3.5 - Advanced systems				
ACS EQPS 3.5.1	Appreciate the use of controller pilot datalink communications when available.	3		APS ACS
ACS EQPS 3.5.2	Appreciate the use of information provided by advanced systems.	3	*Optional content: trajectory-based information, MTCD, MONA, etc.*	APS ACS

TOPIC EQPS 4 - FUTURE EQUIPMENT

Subtopic EQPS 4.1 - New developments				
ACS EQPS 4.1.1	Recognise future developments.	1	New advanced systems	ALL

TOPIC EQPS 5 - EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS LIMITATIONS AND DEGRADATION

Subtopic EQPS 5.1 - Reaction to limitations				
ACS EQPS 5.1.1	Take account of the limitations of equipment and systems.	2		ALL
ACS EQPS 5.1.2	Respond to technical deficiencies of the operational position.	3	Notification procedures, responsibilities	ALL
Subtopic EQPS 5.2 - Communication equipment degradation				
ACS EQPS 5.2.1	Identify that communication equipment has degraded.	3	*Optional content: ground-air and landline communications*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACS EQPS 5.2.2	Apply contingency procedures in the event of communication equipment degradation.	3	Procedures for total or partial degradation of ground-air and landline communications, alternative methods of transferring data	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic EQPS 5.3 - Navigational equipment degradation				
ACS EQPS 5.3.1	Identify when a navigational equipment failure will affect operational ability.	3	*Optional content: VOR, navigational aids*	ALL
ACS EQPS 5.3.2	Apply contingency procedures in the event of a navigational equipment degradation.	3	*Optional content: vertical separation, information to aircraft, navigational assistance, seeking assistance from adjacent units*	ADI APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic EQPS 5.4 - Surveillance equipment degradation				
ACS EQPS 5.4.1	Identify that surveillance equipment has degraded.	3	Partial power failure, loss of certain facilities, total failure	APS ACS
ACS EQPS 5.4.2	Apply contingency procedures in the event of surveillance equipment degradation.	3	*Optional content: inform adjacent sectors, inform aircraft, apply vertical separation (emergency), increased horizontal separation, reduce the number of aircraft entering area of responsibility, transfer aircraft to another unit*	APS ACS

Subtopic EQPS 5.5 - ATC processing system degradation				
ACS EQPS 5.5.1	Identify a processing system degradation.	3	*Optional content: FDPS, SDPS, software processing of situation display*	APS ACS
ACS EQPS 5.5.2	Apply contingency procedures in the event of a processing system degradation.	3		APS ACS

SUBJECT 9: PROFESSIONAL ENVIRONMENT

The subject objective is:

Learners shall identify the need for close cooperation with other parties concerning ATM operations and appreciate aspects of environmental protection.

TOPIC PEN 1 - FAMILIARISATION

Subtopic PEN 1.1 - Study visit to area control centre

ACS PEN 1.1.1	Appreciate the functions and provision of an operational area control service.	3	Study visit to area control centre	ACP ACS

TOPIC PEN 2 - AIRSPACE USERS

Subtopic PEN 2.1 - Contributors to civil ATS operations

ACS PEN 2.1.1	Characterise civil ATS activities in area control centre.	2	Study visit to an area control centre *Optional content: familiarisation visits to TWR, APP, AIS, RCC*	ACP ACS
ACS PEN 2.1.2	Characterise other parties interfacing with ATS operations.	2	*Optional content: familiarisation visits to engineering services, fire and emergency services, airline operations offices*	ALL

Subtopic PEN 2.2 - Contributors to military ATS operations

ACS PEN 2.2.1	Characterise military ATS activities.	2	*Optional content: familiarisation visits to TWR, APP, ACC, AIS, RCC, Air Defence Units*	ALL

TOPIC PEN 3 - CUSTOMER RELATIONS

Subtopic PEN 3.1 - Provision of services and user requirements

ACS PEN 3.1.1	Identify the role of ATC as a service provider.	3		ALL
ACS PEN 3.1.2	Appreciate ATS users requirements.	3		ALL

TOPIC PEN 4 - ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Subtopic PEN 4.1 - Environmental protection

ACS PEN 4.1.1	Appreciate the mitigation techniques used en-route to minimise the aviation's impact on the environment.	3	*Optional content: free route airspace (FRA), night/weekend routes, ICAO Circular 303 - Operational opportunities to minimize fuel use and reduce emissions*	ACP ACS

SUBJECT 10: ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS

The subject objective is:

Learners shall develop professional attitudes to manage traffic in abnormal and emergency situations.

TOPIC ABES 1 - ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS (ABES)

Subtopic ABES 1.1 - Overview of ABES

ACS ABES 1.1.1	List common abnormal and emergency situations.	1	*Optional content: EATM Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations, ambulance flights, ground based safety nets alerts, airframe failure, unreliable instruments, runway incursion*	ALL
ACS ABES 1.1.2	Identify potential or actual abnormal and emergency situations.	3		ALL
ACS ABES 1.1.3	Take into account the procedures for given abnormal and emergency situations.	2	*Optional content: ICAO Doc 4444*	APP ACP APS ACS
ACS ABES 1.1.4	Take into account that procedures do not exist for all abnormal and emergency situations.	2	*Optional content: real life examples*	ALL
ACS ABES 1.1.5	Consider how the evolution of a situation may have an impact on safety.	2	*Optional content: separation, information, coordination*	ALL

TOPIC ABES 2 - SKILLS IMPROVEMENT

Subtopic ABES 2.1 - Communication effectiveness

ACS ABES 2.1.1	Ensure effective communication in all circumstances including the case where standard phraseology is not applicable.	4	Phraseology, vocabulary, readback, silence instruction	ALL
ACS ABES 2.1.2	Apply change of radiotelephony call sign.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL

Subtopic ABES 2.2 - Avoidance of mental overload				
ACS ABES 2.2.1	Describe actions to keep control of the situation.	2	*Optional content: sector splitting, holding, flow management, task delegation*	ALL
ACS ABES 2.2.2	Organise priority of actions.	4		ALL
ACS ABES 2.2.3	Ensure effective circulation of information.	4	*Optional content: between executive and planner/coordinator, with the supervisor, between sectors, between ACC, APP and TWR , with ground staff, etc.*	ALL
ACS ABES 2.2.4	Consider asking for help.	2		ALL
Subtopic ABES 2.3 - Air / ground cooperation				
ACS ABES 2.3.1	Collect appropriate information relevant to the situation.	3		ALL
ACS ABES 2.3.2	Assist the pilot.	3	Pilot workload *Optional content: instructions, information, support, human factors, etc.*	ALL

TOPIC ABES 3 - PROCEDURES FOR ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY SITUATIONS

Subtopic ABES 3.1 - Application of procedures for ABES				
ACS ABES 3.1.1	Apply the procedures for given abnormal and emergency situations.	3	*Optional content: EATM Guidelines for Controller Training in the Handling of Unusual/Emergency Situations, ambulance flights, ground based safety nets alerts, airframe failure*	ALL

Subtopic ABES 3.2 - Radio failure				
ACS ABES 3.2.1	Describe the procedures followed by a pilot when he/she experiences complete or partial radio failure.	2	ICAO Doc 7030 *Optional content: military procedures*	ALL
ACS ABES 3.2.2	Apply the procedures to be followed when a pilot experiences complete or partial radio failure.	3	*Optional content: prolonged loss of communication*	ALL
Subtopic ABES 3.3 - Unlawful interference and aircraft bomb threat				
ACS ABES 3.3.1	Apply ATC procedures associated with unlawful interference and aircraft bomb threat.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
Subtopic ABES 3.4 - Strayed or unidentified aircraft				
ACS ABES 3.4.1	Apply the procedures in the case of strayed aircraft.	3	ICAO Doc 4444 *Optional content: inside controlled airspace, outside controlled airspace*	ALL
ACS ABES 3.4.2	Apply the procedures in the case of unidentified aircraft.	3	ICAO Doc 4444	ALL
Subtopic ABES 3.5 - Diversions				
ACS ABES 3.5.1	Provide navigational assistance to diverting emergency aircraft.	4	Track/heading, distance, other navigational assistance *Optional content: nearest most suitable aerodrome*	APP ACP APS ACS
Subtopic ABES 3.6 - Transponder failure				
ACS ABES 3.6.1	Apply procedures in the event of an SSR transponder failure.	3	ICAO Doc 4444, ICAO Doc 7030 *Optional content: total/partial failure, impact on ADS-B/Mode S capability*	APS ACS

www.eurocontrol.int